



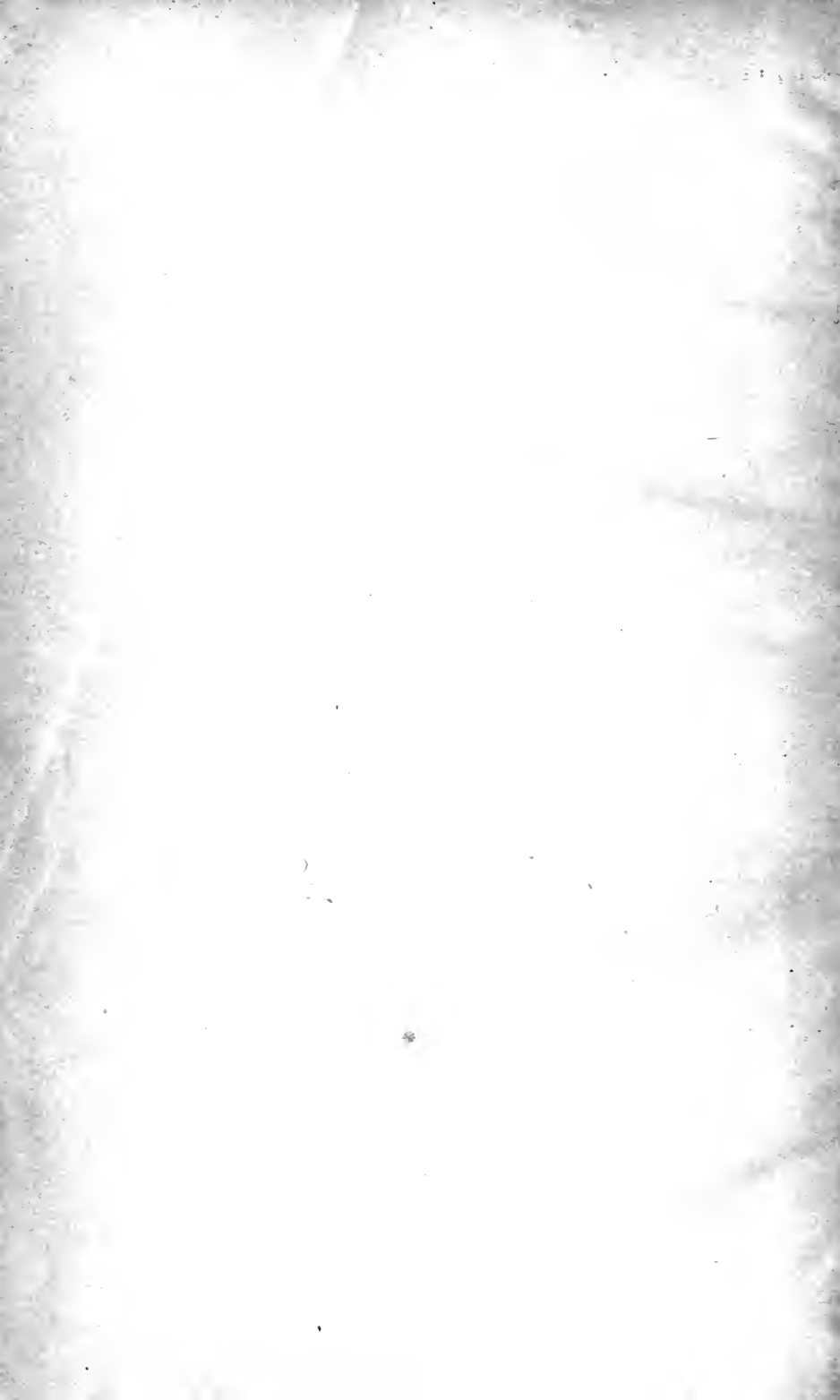
3 1761 02017541 0

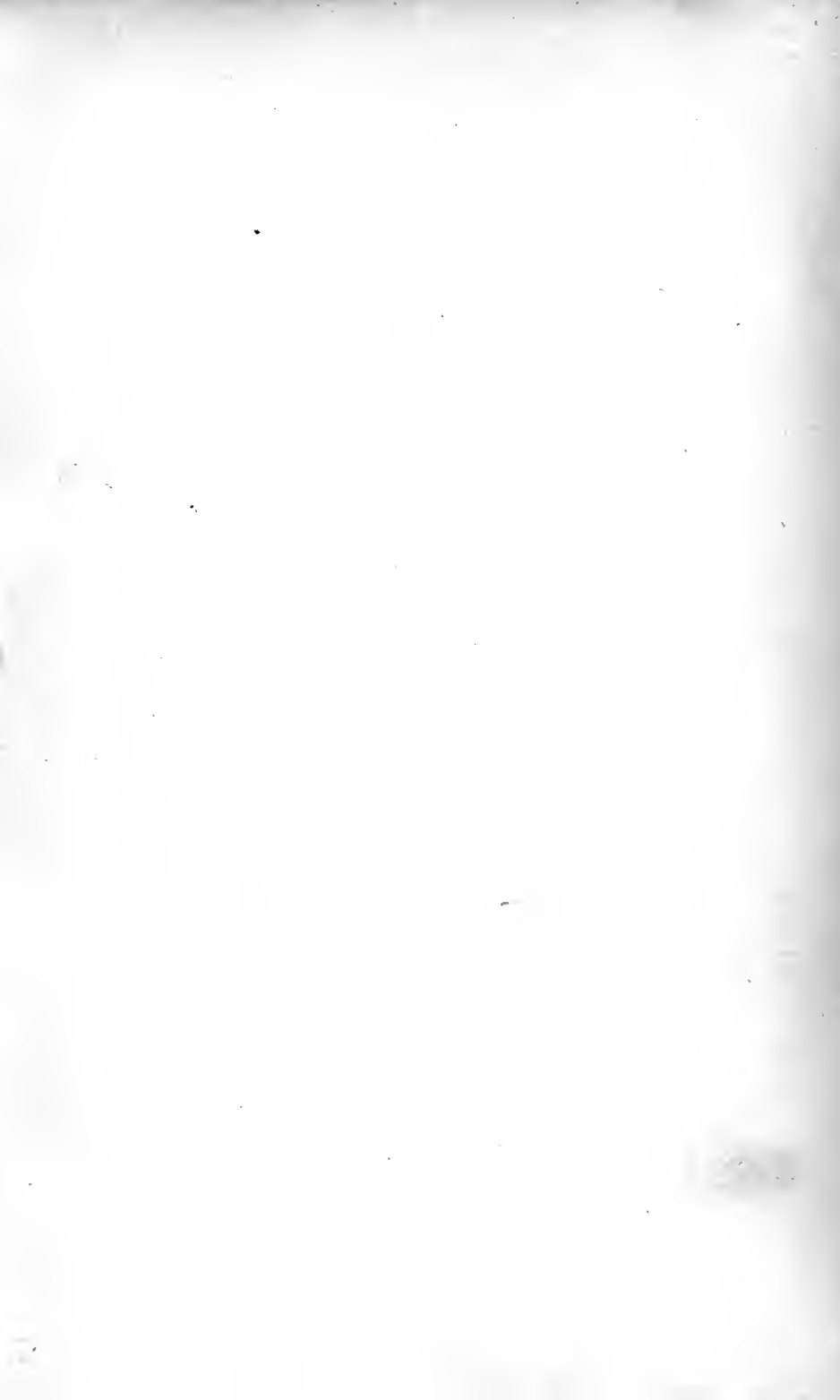
VICTORIA UNIVERSITY LIBRARY
TORONTO, ONTARIO



J.D. Rolino









CHAUCER.

ENLARGED FROM THE PORTRAIT ON LEAF 91 OF
HOCCLEVE'S DE REGIMINE PRINCIPUM,
HARLEIAN M.S. 4866, BRITISH MUSEUM.

LIFE-RECORDS OF CHAUCER.

II.

CHAUCER AS VALET & SQUIRE TO EDWARD III.

King Edward III's Household and Wardrobe Ordinances.

A.D. 1323.

ENGLISHED BY FRANCIS TATE IN 1601,
AND EDITED FROM HIS MS, THE ASHMOLE MS 1147,

WITH EXTRACTS FROM

Edward III's Household Book,

BY

F. J. FURNIVALL, M.A., TRIN. HALL, CAMB.,

FOUNDER AND DIRECTOR OF THE CHAUCER SOCIETY, ETC.

PUBLISHED FOR THE CHAUCER SOCIETY
BY N. TRÜBNER & CO., 57 & 59, LUDGATE HILL,
LONDON.

1876.

PR
1901
L5
v. 2-3

DEC 6 1956

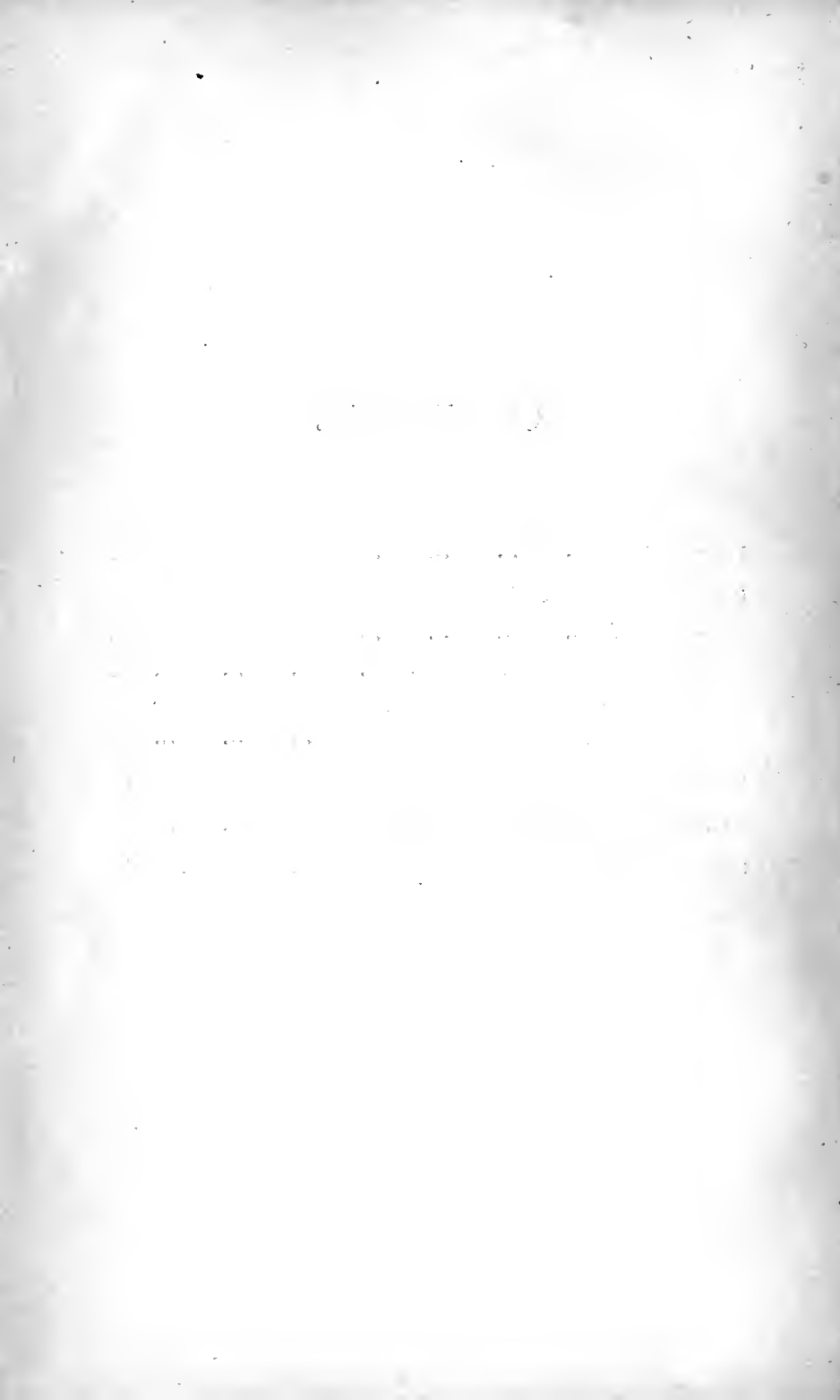
Second Series,

14.

JOHN CHILDS AND SON, PRINTERS.

CONTENTS.

	PAGE
FOREWORDS	v
Edward the Second's Household Ordinances:	
CONTENTS	1
ORDINANCES FOR THE OFFICERS	5
ORDINANCE FOR THE STATE OF THE WARDROBE AND THE ACCOUNT FOR THE HOUSEHOLD	58
Extracts from Edward II's Household Book from 2 MSS.	63
Chaucer's Oath as Controller of the Customs	72
INDEX	73



FOREWORDS.

- | | |
|---|---|
| <p>§ 1. <i>Of pleasure in the details of great men's lives; with a Dryasdust's defence of himself, and attack on his scorers</i>, p. v.</p> <p>§ 2. <i>The 7-years' gap in Shakspeare's life</i>, 1585—1592, p. vi.</p> <p>§ 3. <i>The 7-years' gap in Chaucer's life</i>, 1361—1368, p. vii.</p> <p>§ 4. <i>Of Valets and King's Household Books</i>, p. ix.</p> <p>§ 5. <i>Chaucer as Valet or Yeoman of the King's Chamber</i>, p. x.</p> <p>§ 6. <i>Probable dates of Chaucer's appointments as Valet and Squire</i>, p. xii.</p> | <p>§ 7. <i>Chaucer's duties as Squire to Edw. III</i>, p. xiii.</p> <p>§ 8. <i>The praise of Edw. III's Court by Edw. IV's Household Book</i>, p. xiv.</p> <p>§ 9. <i>Chaucer's Wages and Robe- and Shoe-money</i>, p. xvi.</p> <p>§ 10. <i>His allowances in Food, Lights, and Fuel; his Bedroom and possible Furniture, Bleeding, &c.</i>, p. xvi.</p> <p>§ 11. <i>Chaucer's court-service the turning point of his life: his early hopeless love; his first French and Italian journeys</i>, p. xviii.</p> <p>§ 12. <i>Thanks to Miss Marshall</i>, p. xx.</p> |
|---|---|

§ 1. THE feeling which prompts folk to get at all the facts they can about the lives of men gone from them, whose works they love, seems to me natural and right. A few there are who profess to be above care for such details, and say they are satisfied to know a writer from his works alone. But the rest of us, as we delight to see, to know, our Tennyson, Ruskin, Huxley, of to-day, and get their looks, their tones, their little special ways, into our eyes and ears and hearts, to hear from an old schoolfellow or college friend, all their history, so we desire to realise to ourselves, so far as may be, the looks and life, the daily work and evening task, of the Chaucer, Shakspeare, Milton, who've left us in the body, but are with us in the spirit, friends of our choicest hours, guides in our highest flights.

And tho' this desire for knowledge of the outward life of our greatest men may in a few cases, with so-call'd prosaic natures, seem to make them darken for themselves the genius of their hero, by the cloud of antiquarian dust they raise before him, yet you'll find, if

you ask the grubbers themselves, that the cloud has not only for them its silver lining, but that they always feel the light and warmth of the Sun and its life-giving beams behind. And they may tell you, that the difference between you (the superior being) and them is simply this, that whereas they care weeks and months of patient unpaid drudgery for the men they reverence, you care only to express your feelings about them in prettily-turnd phrases in articles and Lectures, and get well paid for doing it: "You give up your chance of guineas, or airing your feelings, to do a lot of distasteful work, for Chaucer or Shakspeare? You'd see him damnd first!"¹ But however this be, in those students of our great poets who can keep the outward facts of their lives in proper relation to the inward, who can use the one for illustration and explanation of the other, the desire must always exist, to be able to trace each poet's life from his cradle to his grave, and specially to know what he was doing when and after he first became a man, stood up for himself in the world, and enterd on the course which ended in his fame.

§ 2. But it is precisely this period about which we know nothing in Shakspeare's case, next to nothing in Chaucer's; and great is the pity of it. Shakspeare we have, born in 1564, a blue-eyed, chestnut-haired² boy, in Stratford; at the so-cald 'Birthplace,' no doubt, when he was 11, when his father bought it; at the low-rooft school, playing "more sacks to the mill" (*L. L. Lost*, IV. iii. 81), and other boys' games of the day, never hearing the wonderful stories that Adventurers told him later in London³, tho' learning the country

¹ My Dryasdust friend uses strong language occasionally. How far it is justified in this case, let the absence of monographs on the thousand and one points still needing elucidation in both poets, witness.

² Shakspeare's Sonnet-friend, Will H.'s, hair,

"And buds of marjoram had stolen thy hair."—99, 7,

must have been the purple, hyacinthine locks, sometimes seen now:

"*Origanum vulgare*, Common Marjoram. Flowers purple, and the bractes tinged with the same colour. Fragrant and aromatic."—Hooker's *British Flora*.

"It is sometimes found with flowers of a reddish colour, in dry grounds. I have gathered it perfectly *white*, though rarely. The same may be said of the wild thyme, and common Basil thyme."—William Whale (*Flower-gardens*, Egham).

³ *Gonzalo*. Faith, sir, you need not fear. *When we were boys*,
Who would believe that there were mountaineers
Dew-lapt like bulls, whose throats had hanging at 'em

lore of which his *Venus* is so full, the love of nature which sweetens all his plays; then 18, begetting his child, marrying his wife of 26, and having two girls and a boy before he is 21. Then disappearing. His name is, after his father's, in one record of an action in the Queen's Bench in 1587. But it's not till 1592 that we see him again, call'd a '*Johannes factotum*¹,' successful enough, as actor and dramatist, to provoke envy and sneers. What true Shakspeare student does not long to know how those years between 1586 and 1592 were spent? Who is not certain that the knowledge, if it could be got, would throw light on Shakspeare's after-work?

§ 3. So is it almost with Chaucer. We have him as a boy at his father's wine-shop or tavern in narrow Thames St, chatting, no doubt, with English and foreign seamen, with citizens who came for their wine, helping to fill their pots, perhaps,—a natty, handy lad, but full of quiet fun—messaging, I dare say, in Wal-brook, that bounded his father's place²; fishing in the Thames, I should think; out on May-day for sweet-scented boughs to dress his father's tavern-pole. At school—St Paul's Cathedral perchance—sharing in all the games and larks that Fitzstephen so well describes some 200 years before³; seeing all the grand shows that went on in Smithfield, and London streets; well up in his classes, I'll be bound; the boy the father of the man in this, that he lov'd his book's well. Then he goes to serve Prince⁴ Lionel's wife as page, and gets his dress of short cloak, pair of red and black breeches, and shoes, with 3s. 6d. for necessaries, as Mr Bond has shown us⁵. Then, at 19 or thereabouts, he's

Wallets of flesh? or that there were such men
Whose heads stood in their breasts? which now we find
Each putter-out of five for one will bring us
Good warrant of.—*Tempest*, IV. iii. 43—49.

¹ Greene's posthumous *Groatesworth of Wit*.

² By an old City ordinance, every citizen on the banks of the stream was bound to keep a rake, and clear his bit of the water with it.

³ See the bit of Lydgate's school life in my *Babees Book* Forewords, and the poems of the Bircht Schoolboy, &c. in the *Book* itself.

⁴ I call him Prince, tho' he was never call'd so in his own day, in order to mark that he was a king's son. Our importation of this foreign title and custom is a nuisance, as all our many Princes will perpetuate and multiply Princes instead of letting themselves and their children fall into the ordinary ranks of society. They'll all want incomes too out of the nation's funds, and will foster our already over great flunkeyism.

⁵ Addit. MS. Brit. Mus. 18,632.—*Fortnightly Review*, 1866.

a soldier, and a prisoner; perhaps even then a servant of the king's; at any rate, ransomed on March 1, 1360, by the king's help, at the cost of £16, thirteen and fourpence less than the cost of Robert de Clynton's horse, and £4 less than the price of John de Beuerle's *cursor* or war-horse, both the king's gifts. And then we lose sight of our young Chaucer at 20; and we get no direct tidings of him for seven years, when we find on June 20, 1367, that he is a '*Valettus*' of the king¹, or, as a later document of May 25, 1368, shows, a '*Valettus Camere Regis*'², a Valet or Yeoman of the king's chamber³.

¹ Rex omnibus ad quos, &c. salutem. Sciatis quod de gratiâ nostrâ speciali, & pro bono servitio quod dilectus *Valettus noster, Galfridus Chaucer*, nobis impendit & impendet in futurum, concessimus ei viginti marcas, percipiendas singulis annis ad Scaccarium nostrum per æquales portiones, ad totam vitam ipsius *Galfridi*, vel quousque pro statu suo aliter duxerimus ordinandum, &c.—Teste Rege apud Castrum de *Quenesburgh* vicesimo die Junii, &c., 41 Ed. 3, [A.D. 1367], pat. 41, p. 1, m. 13. In Godwin; and Urry's Chaucer, sign. b 2, note; from Rymer's *Fœdera*, N. E. iii. 829.

² Issue Roll, Easter 42, Edw. III (1368).

"Die Jovis xxv^{to}, die Maii (1368).

"*Galfrido Chaucere, uni vallettorum Camere Regis, cui dominus Rex xx. marcas annuatim ad scaccarium ad totam vitam suam percipiendas, pro bono servitio per ipsum eidem domino Regi impenso vel quousque aliter pro statu suo fuerit provisum, per literas suas patentes nuper concessit. In denariis sibi liberatis in persolutionem decem marcarum sibi liberandarum de hujusmodi certo suo, videlicet de termino Pasche proximo preterito, per breve suum de liberatione de hoc termino. vj.li. xij.s. iij.d.*"—Nicolas's *Life of Chaucer*, in Morris's Chaucer, i. 95.

³ The following description of Chaucer in old age, is from *Greenes Vision* [soon after Sept. 1592], quoted in Mr J. P. Collier's *Bibl. Catal.* i. 338:

"Description of Sir Geffery Chaucer.

"His stature was not very tall;	A sleevelesse jacket, large and wide,
Leane he was; his legs were small,	With many pleights and skirtes side,
Hosd within a stock of red;	Of water chamlet, did he weare:
A buttond bonnet on his head,	A whittell by his belt he beare.
From under which did hang, I weene,	His shooes were corned broad before;
Silver haire both bright and sheene.	His Inckhorne at his side he wore.
His beard was white, trimmed round;	And in his hand he bore a booke:
His countenance blithe and merry	Thus did the auntient Poet looke."
found.	

To this is added a pendant picture of John Gower, followed by a discussion between Chaucer, Gower, and Greene, on the merits of some of the productions of the 'last.

William Bullein, in his Dialogue . . . wherein is a godlie regiment against the Fever Pestilence, . . . Julij 1573, has a pleasanter picture of Chaucer, and of Brigham who put the tomb over his grave in Westminster Abbey:—

"Wittie Chaucer satte in a Chaire of gold covered with Roses, writing prose and risme, accompanied with the Spirites of many kynges, knightes, and faire ladies, whom he pleasantly besprinkled with the sweete water of the

§ 4. What was he doing all these seven years? An old friend of mine—now a Sussex clergyman near eighty—told me in my boyhood that when he first went to Oxford, his mother insisted on his taking a valet up to college with him. She made him do it. But what to do with the man, my friend couldn't think. He didn't want him; and the man was a regular nuisance, doing nothing. At length my friend went out for a walk one dusty day; and on coming home, called for a clean pair of boots and straps, and told the man to brush his trowsers. While the valet was doing this, it suddenly occurred to my friend that the man should always do it. He chuckled *Eureka* to himself, and with a solemn face gave orders that thenceforth, whenever he came in, the valet should always bring him clean boots and straps and brush his clothes. Then he felt happy. He had found the man his calling in life. When I got afterwards to know that Chaucer was a *vallettus* of Edward III, this story of my old friend's made me very anxious to find out what Chaucer, as valet, did. Did he clean Edward III's boots, and brush him down whenever he came in from riding? So, to find out the secret, after a time I had a hunt for Edward III's Household Book (*Liber Niger Domus Regis Edwardi Tercii*), but could find no entry of it. There was no MS. at the Museum, Bodleian, any of the Oxford Colleges, or Cambridge, so far as I could learn. The Museum folk sent me to the Record Office. No Household Book was there; but a Treasurer's account-book was; and near the top of the 2nd leaf of the continuously-written¹ entries of that, I found the payment for Chaucer's ransom that I spoke of above; and not a little delighted was I with the find. So there was nothing for it but to fall back on the extant Household Books of Edward II and Edward IV—for those of Richard II and Henry IV (the Duchess Blanche's son) I couldn't find—and from these infer what Chaucer's duties must have been. I knew generally that the *Valettus* of chivalry was the young fellow

welle consecrated unto the Muses; and as the heavenly sprite commended his deare Brigham for the worthie entombyng of his bones, worthie of memorie, in the long slepyng chamber of most famous kinges, even so in tragedie he bewailed the sodaine resurrection of many a noble man before their time, in spoilyng of Epitaphes; whereby many have lost their inheritaunce."—*ib.*, p. 98.

¹ Columns of payments come first.

of good standing who was to become, first Squire, and then Knight¹, and that he was above the *garcio* or groom; but I wanted something more definite about his work in the household.

The Household Book of Edw. II was in French², and I therefore resolv'd to print the earliest englishing of it I could find, that by Francis Tate, March 13, 1601, in the Bodleian Ashmole MS. 1147, art. iii. Edward IV's Household Book was printed in 1790 by the Society of Antiquaries, in their most interesting volume *Household Ordinances* (and Recipes, &c.), nominally from the Harleian MS. 642. But unless some imitator of Bp. Percy outpercyd him in altering the spelling and words of his original, or some one has put a new Harl. 642 in the stead of that of 1790, the Antiquaries' print must have been made from another MS. than the present Harl. 642. At any rate, from this MS. I have given the passages³ that relate to the Valets or Yeomen⁴ of the King's Chamber, and the Squires of the Body and of the Chamber, so as to show Chaucer's probable work both as Valet and Squire.

§ 5. Edward II's Book tells us that he had eight "Vallets⁵ of

¹ This post of *Valettus* or *Valectus*, says Mr Selden in his Titles of Honour, Part II, chap. 5, § 47, was conferr'd upon young Heirs design'd to be Knighted, or young Gentlemen of great Descent or Quality.—*Urry's Chaucer*, Life by Wm. Thomas, from Dart's Collections, sign. b 2, note c.

² The MS. is not known, I believe. The Cotton MS. ordinances are for the kingdom generally, as *De libertatibus ecclesie*. *De pace obseruanda* (leaf 22). *De magna carta tenenda* (leaf 22, back). *De parlamento annuatim tenendo* (leaf 30). *De Statutis de Mercatoribus* (leaf 30, back), &c. The Catalogue entry of them is:—Cotton MS. Cleopatra C vii, leaves 21—35.—

³ Ordernaunces faites à Londres 5 Edw. II touchant l'estat de seon houstal et de seon realme: cum ordinationibus factis virtute ejusdem commissionis; quæ ordinationes publicatæ erant in cœmeterio S. Pauli London, per D. Simonem Episc. Sarisburiensem, A° 1311.—Cotton Catalogue, p. 582, col. 1.

⁴ A page from Edw. II's book would have been enough too; but I wanted the whole in type, as we already had Edw. I's Wardrobe Book and Edw. IV's Household Book.

⁵ I take the Yeoman of Chaucer's Prologue to be rather a grown-up farmer or forester than a youth of good breeding in training for squireship and knighthood.

⁶ The work of the after 'Henchmen' seems to have been done by the Wards, young fellows who had lost their fathers, and who, not having been "given or sold," during their minority, by the king to some man he wanted to help, were kept, cloth'd, and traid in his court as his under-squires or henchmen.—See p. 17, 18 below, and the interesting sections on the "Henchmen, VI Enfautes," and their "Maistryr of Henchmen, to shew the schooles of urbanitie and nourtoure of England, to lerne them to ryde clenely and surely,"

the kinges chambre," while Edward IV's says that he had only four. Their duties are nearly the same in both Books,—serving in the chamber, making beds, holding and carrying torches, (to which Ed. IV's book adds, setting the boards or tables on their trestles, watching the king (for orders) by course, dressing the chambers with hangings, &c., and going messages), and doing whatever else their officers bade them :—

ED. II.

29. And eight valletes of the chambre, foot men, who shal serve in the chambre, makeinge bedes, holding & carying torches, & divers other thinges which he & the Chamberlaine shal commaunde them.

ED. IV.

Yeomen¹ of Chambre, iiii, to make beddis, to beare or hold torches, to sett boardis, to apparell all Chambers, and such othir seruices as the Chamberlaine, or Vshers of Chambre, comaunde or assigne; to attend the Chambre; to watche the King by course; to goe in messages, &c.

Some of these duties would, I suppose, be considerd menial now, even by Gentlemen and Gentlewomen of the Bedchamber; but it would not be so in Chaucer's time; and even still one hears ladies say they think it an honour to be allowd to hand a Queen her stockings. Those of us who can't so identify the office-holder with the office, would yet be willing enough to clean Chaucer's or Shakspeare's boots, if either were here, and need were. But, to our muttons.

We know that Edward III had nine Valets or Yeomen of his Chamber in 1344-7, and that they were reckond as part of his army², and that he had twelve in Jan. 1347-8 (see *H. Ord.*, p. 11); but as

&c., in *Household Ordinances*, p. 44-5, and my *Babees Book*, p. ii.—Chaucer had grants of two such wards in 1375: Novr. 8, of Edward Staplegate in Kent; Dec. 28, of William de Solys, of Solys in Kent. The grantee was allowed to sweat his ward's land, and either marry him to whom he liked, or make the young fellow pay a fine to marry the girl he fancied himself.

¹ The adder of the references to the Table of Contents of the MS. has, I hold, wrongly treated the *Valetti* as *Garciones* or Grooms. He wrote the headings right; but then put the wrong references to em.

² See the entry in *Household Ordinances*, p. 8, from the Treasurer of the Household's account: "Here ensueth the rates of wages of peace and warre, expences necessary of officers, and other chardges, concerning the howsholde of the Prince of noble memorye, Edward the Third, as well in tyme of peace as warre; and also the number of soldiers, as well by land as sea, and shippes retyrned in the warres of the said kinge; as by the parcelles of the accompte of Walter Wentwage, treasurer of the same howsholde, from the 21st daie of Aprill, in the 18th year of the raigne of the saide kinge [A.D. 1344], unto the 24th day of November, in the 21st year of the said kinges raigne [1347]." Printed from Harl. MS. 782, leaves 62—71 back.

he had also 91 or 101 Esquires in 1344-7, see *H. Ord.*, p. 3, while a Record Office list shows that 37 only were to get a gift of clothes at Christmas 1366,—or some year later, as I hold,—I suppose that the numbers of Valets or Yeomen and Squires generally serving in Court (see p. 64 below) were less than these full numbers of 9 and 91 or 101.

§ 6. When Chaucer was appointed Valet or Yeoman, and when Squire, we cannot tell. The Record Office list just mentiond, bears no original date on it, but has the late-written conjectural date of 1366 on its back. As however it contains Chaucer's name among the Squires, I do not believe the Record Office date for it is right. No patents of Chaucer's appointments have yet been found. His name is not in the list of the gifts and fees, *Dona et Feoda* of 40-1 Edw. III, A.D. 1366. And when '*Galfridus Chaucer*' first occurs in the Pension-Grant of June 20, 1367, he is '*Valettus*'¹. On May 25, 1368, he is again *unus "valettorum"*¹. On Dec. 25, 1368, he is an "Esquier of less degre," in the order for gifts of Robes to the Household; and on Nov. 12, 1372, he is "*Scutifer*" in the Commission to proceed to Genoa. On Nov. 24, 1372, he is again *vallettus*²; but on Dec. 1, 1372, *armiger*³. On Nov. 22, 1373, he is again *vallettus*⁴; but after that, always *armiger* or *scutifer* when any title is given him.

As his pension of 20 marks for life was given on June 20, 1367, for past services as well as future ones, we may suppose any date for Chaucer's going into the king's service. I believe he enterd it in or before 1361, because I suppose that the beautiful high-bred girl he fell in love with—she of the *Pity* and *Blaunche*—was in the king's Household too, where he could often see her during his 8-years' love-sickness⁵, and try for a chance of declaring his love. I should not be surprisd to find that Chaucer was in Edw. III's service, and not only his son Lionel's, when the king invaded France in the autumn of 1369. But this is as yet uncertain. The date of our poet's squireship is uncertain too. If we allow that the *vallettus* in the pension-entries of Nov. 24, 1372, is due to its repetition of Chaucer's title in the original

¹ p. viii. n., above.

² Nicolas, in Morris's *Chaucer*, i. 95, D.

³ *ib.* E.

⁴ *ib.* p. 96, E.

⁵ *Trial-Forewords*, p. 18, 29-31, 34-35, 39-40, 114, 126.

grant of 1369, we may fall back on the Robe-Order of Dec. 25, 1368, and recognize in his "Esquier of less degree," his attainment of his brevet-majority from his captaincy, or lance-corporalship from his private's post as one of the rank and file, and so treat him as a Squire then. His being abroad on the king's service in 1370 helps this, I think. At any rate he was a Squire sooner or later; and we may therefore safely inquire what his probable duties were, tho' we've only those of Edward II's and Edward IV's Squires to go by.

§ 7. Now each of these kings had two sets of Squires. Edw. II, one for his mouth, and the second for his chamber; Edw. IV, one for his body, and the second for his chamber. Edw. II's Mouth-Squires were three: the first, to look after his food, and taste it to see that it wasn't poisond—in his hall evidently;—the second, to carve for him; the third to bear his cup¹,—Assayer, Carver, Cup-bearer.—His Chamber-Squires² were twelve, but the duty of only one is mentiond, to be assayer, or taster against poison, in the chamber, the private chamber as oppos'd to the public hall. Edward IV had four Body-Squires, whose business was "in many secrets"³; two of whom always waited on him, dresst and undresst him, watcht him day and night, and calld the Chamberlain whenever the king wanted him. I do not suppose that Chaucer was one of the like Squires to Edward III, but rather of the set called "Esquiers of howsholde" in 1347 (*H. Ord.*, p. 10), who corresponded to Edw. IV's "**Squyers of Houshold XL**, chosen men of there possession, worship, and wisdom," of whom twenty always attended the king 'in ryding and going at alle tymes,' and brought his dishes from the table where they were surveyd, to his table. Then comes in the Harl. MS. 642, tho' not in Francis Tate's version, the passage which, if it was not bodily in Edward III's *Liber Niger*, yet I mean to believe⁴, represents trully the custom of his time:—

"These Esquires of housold of old be accustomed, winter and summer, in afternoones and in eueninges to drawe to Lordes Chambres within Court, there to keep honest company after there Cunninge, in

¹ See p. 18, below. ² By this I understand Squires of the Bedchamber.

³ See p. 64, below.—*H. Ord.*, p. 36.

⁴ This is the phrase of my charming friend, long dead, alas, Mrs Gaskell, the authoress of *Mary Barton*, *Ruth*, &c.

talking of Cronicles of Kinges, and of others pollicies, or in pipeing or harpeing, songinges, or other actes marcealls, to helpe to occupie the Court, and accompanie estraingers, till the time require of departing."

That was what Chaucer could do, and did, I am persuaded. And I wish I'd been there to hear him talk Chronicles of kings and other pollicies, to pipe and harp and sing, and to keep honest company with me, after his cunning.

§ 8. Well, wishing hurts nobody. It was a noble and well-orderd Court that Chaucer servd and dwelt in, if we may trust Edw. IV's Black Book ; and a Court in which the officers were well provided for by the king when they left his service, as the same Book says, and as Chaucer's appointment to the Controllership of Customs when he marrid and settl'd (as I hold) in 1374, witnesses. Here is the passage in which Edward III is praised :

Harl. 642, leaf 6, back, at foot.

Domus Regis Edwardi tercij was the house of very pollicie and flower ¹of England, the first setter of Certaineties amongst his domesticall meyne, vpon a groundid rule. Notwithstanding, his fadre the second Edward, made many good Customes of housold ; therof, one to be remembrid specially was, to bred vp beues and motons in his parkes, suffisauntz to serue his housold. And anothir : in his daies bifore were vsid noe fee of no manner vitaille purveyid for the expence of the house², not to be takyn by any officir to his propre vse, of any thinge that mought serue to this housold honestly. Also he, this thirde Edward, appointid diuers duties vnto his officys and officers, by a formall and convenient Custome³, more certaine then was vsid biforn his time [that is to say⁴], of all wages within Court and without ; All manner Lyuerez of winter and summer ; the fees of all astatis, and of officers and [of] housold, and degrees, as well of geftis of money, fees of beistis, and also fees of othir stufte *perusid*⁵ or othirwise occupied within the Court, and touching that ; The noubre also of officers thoroughe all Englonde, as well of his housold, and thair clothing for winter and summer, as of all other

¹ leaf 7.

² Antiq. print: household.

³ 'The Custumal here referred to is printed before, p. 3 to p. 12.' So says the note in *H. Ord.*, p. 18. But what is printed on p. 3—12 is, the rates of the wages of Edw. III's officers and the expenses of his household in peace and war, with statements of the numbers of his soldiers and ships, being the account of Walter Wentwage, Treasurer of the Household, from April 21, 1344, to Nov. 24, 1347.

⁴ from the print : not in MS.

⁵ us'd, consumd.

¹Officers outward. This noble Edward had gret richesse of his Lordes, gret loue of his Counsell²; and amongst his Counsellers grete studie how to make them rich by pollicie vpon straingers outlandes. And, after his richesse was purchasid, his said Lordes of Counsaile sought many waies, and deuised and compassid how they might assertaine the kinges howse; Whiche was so longe and defuse a werke, in their studie, to reforme the people of thair old lore³; That this king prayed his Lordis to surcease of thair gret Labour, and almost endles; And himselfe tooke all on hand. And whereas, in the begining, himselfe was liberall, after, he did first reforme himselfe, and all that would be dwellers in his howsold. And so he framid all his newe statutes, Comandementes, and charges, vpon euery officir inward and outward; and so he executid his actes in honour and profit to himselfe, And to the fauour and great ease of all his leige people."

The writer then goes on to note the changes that had been made in the king's household since Edw. III's time—not affecting Chaucer's position,—and thus gives a few particulars about Ed. III's customs and slow marches, his four-and-twenty archers shooting before him:—

"Example hereof we take to build vpon a more perfect new house, Because this noble King Edward the third his housold varieth gretly fro the housold that kinges haue kept since that time, and yet in these daies; ffor our soueraigne ⁴Lordis housold is now dischargid of the priuie ⁵Seale, and all his Clarkis; Of the Court of Marshallseye and all his Clarkes and yeomen, saueing at the five feestis of the yeare, when, with thair long tipped staues, they owe to helpe the porters to keep the gate, And the Vshers at the hall doore, And to the King in preez of peple whithersomeuer the King goe in thoo daies festiuall; Of the Wardrober, also callid Clerke purueyour; besides the gret wardrober of housold⁶, which is the Countinghouse, And the housold Thesaurer callid *Custos magne Garderobe hospicij*. Also dischargid of all artificiers vnder him, but when him selfe cometh at the gret feastis, or elliz that he be sent fore. Also in some one office were two maistres, the Clerc of kitching deuidid also fro the pantrie; The Botiller of Englund for the most part, and diuers other many officis and officers, both chaungid in name and deed, aswell Sergeantes of Armes, And messagers many, with the twentie fower Archers a foote before the King, shutting when he rode by the Countrie, callid *Gard Corps le Roy*. And therefore the King journied not passing tenn or twelue myles a daye. And as other officers in housold, then haueing gret Labour, And tooke neither ⁷Wages, fees nor Clothing expressed by the statutes, wher-

¹ leaf 7, back. ² comynautie (the better reading). ³ the print reads 'law'.
⁴ (viz. E. 4,) MS, margin. ⁵ leaf 8. ⁶ MS. housolder. ⁷ leaf 8, back.

on was gret perill, And also the Liurey for horses at bouche of Court, of gentilmen and many othir requiring a gret busines that nowe is lefte, And putt into siluer to increase thair wagis: This King appointid of officis outwarde to reward his housold seruices after thair desertes, to be parkers, some forsters, warreners, keepers of manners, Balywikes, Constabeships, porterships, Receiuers, Corrodyez, Wardis, marriagis, and many othir thinges of valure in portis and townes, Citties &c; And for is chappillmen, Churchis, prebendes, free chappilles and pensions &c When any such fell in his geest, or elys by his Lettres of Contemplation to gett such benefitt of any other Lord, for his housold man. In the festiuall daies, or when astate should be shewid, he would be seruid with fower Course, or fiue, his Lordis and gentills with thre. And eury meese after two course. De quo metrices sic/.

Mente senex, etate virens. sine fraude fidelis.

Purus carne fuit: iustus, amansque deum/.

§ 9. In 1344-7, Treasurer Wentwage's account, before referrod to, shows that Edw. III's "Esquiers . . . ushers and sewers of the hall and chamber" had 12 pence for "Wages in Tyme of Warre by the Daie" (*H. Ord.*, p. 9), and that "Esquiers of the Kinges chamber" had 2 shillings when they were "aboute the Kinges affaires out of his courte, by daie." "Yeomen of the Kinges chambre" had only 6d. a day when thus out of court; and "yemen of offices in the Kinges howse" had only 6d. wages while in court; but Chaucer couldn't have come into this last class. For "robes and leveryes of men servantes, intituled Calciatura (shoes), besides all wages breved," the "Esquiers of howsholde" had, every man, for Robes, 20s. for every season, that is, winter and summer, or 40s. a year; while for his shoes the "Liveres entitled Calciatura, every man [had] 4s. 8d. by yere"; and there were "yemen of the Kinges chamber, 12" who took this allowance.—*H. Ord.*, p. 11.

§ 10. Of the extent and value of Chaucer's allowances in food, &c., every reader must make up his own mind from the evidence before him on the allowances for Edw. II's squires at p. 181, and Edw. IV's at p. 64. But as the 7½d. a day wages, and 40s. a year for clothes, were the same in both Courts,—tho' the Edw. II gallon of beer a day is cut down to the Edw. IV half-gallon of ale, except when a squire was bled or ill, when he had 'one gallon ale'—we probably sha'n't be far out in thinking of Chaucer drest in the

king's livery, sleeping with an other squire in one bed¹, waiting on the king at meals, &c., riding out with him, dining in his hall with fellow-squires, taking his own half-gallon of ale at night to his joint bedroom, where in winter the two mate-squires would have each his two Paris candles, and his faggot, or half a bundle of cut wood, to keep warm his glass-windowless (?), chimneyless, rush-strewn room², closed by the wooden leaf or shutter that one finds in the King's Coll. Camb. lists in 1598³. I suppose "a standing bedstead with head and tester of wood" would be too grand an affair for squires in 1369-74, and that "a trundle bed . . . corded"⁴ would suffice. May we add from the 1598 lists, "a leade and a cocke to wasshe with,"

¹ Who of these was his bedfellow?

CHAUCER'S THIRTY-SIX FELLOW SQUIRES IN EDW. III'S HOUSEHOLD IN THE FORTIETH YEAR OF THAT KING'S REIGN, A.D. 1366.—In the "Schedule of names of the Household for whom robes for Christmas were to be provided," not dated, but marked by the Record Office " ? 40 Edw. III," Exch. Q. R. Wardrobe Accounts, 39/10, Chaucer's name occurs as seventeenth among those of thirty-seven Esquires :—

Esquiers xxxvij.

Johan de Herlyng.	John Tichemerssh.
Wauter Whithors.	Robert la Souche.
Thomas Cheyne.	Esmon Rose.
Johan de Beuerle.	Laurence Hauberk.
Johan de Romesey.	Griffith de la Chambre.
Wauter Walssh.	Johan de Thorpe.
Hugh Wake.	Raulyn Erchedeakne.
Roger Clebury.	Rauf de Knyueton.
Piers de Cornewaille.	Thomas Hertfordyngbury.
Robert de Ferers.	Hugh Strelley.
Elmyn Leget.	Hugh Lyngeyn.
Robert de Corby.	Nicholas Prage.
Collard Dabrichecourt.*	Richard Torperle.
Thomas Hauteyn.	Richard Wirle.
Hugh Cheyne.	Johan Northrugge.
Thomas Foxle.	Hauyn Narret.
GEFFREY CHAUCER. [17]	Symond de Bokenham.
Geffrey Stucle.	Johan Legge.
Simond de Burgh.	

[From internal evidence I am inclined to think that this Roll belongs to the forty-second year of Edward the Third, 1368.—W. D. SELBY.]

* Index of Hustings-Rolls Deeds and Wills in the Guildhall Records, London (xlix^o, 3 back, col. 1), Monday after the feast of St Edward the King [Oct. 13], A^o xlix^o [Ed. III, A.D. 1375] : *Carta domini Regis Edwardi Anglie facta Collardo Daubrichecourte, armigero.*

² Query, though, whether each couple in one bed had a room to themselves.

³ An Inventory of the Stuff in the Colledge Chambers (King's Colledge) 1598. Communicated by Henry Bradshaw, Esq., M.A., University Librarian.—*Camb. Antiq. Soc.'s Com.*, iii, 181.

⁴ *ib.* p. 187.

and "a frame of oke for books¹," or even "a studdye desked and shelved rounde," with "a locke & kay for the dore of the studdye," and "a wryting table or bord in the studdye²" for Chaucer's share of the room, and "a fayre Ioyned forme of oke³" to sit on?

But perhaps one can't fairly take the belongings of two King's students of 1598 as like those of a pair of Edw. III's squires⁴ of 1370-4. Chaucer was probably bled every spring;—"No time is better than that for bloodletting," says *Modus Cenandi*, in my *Babees Book*, Pt. II, p. 55, l. 273;—and, let us hope, reapt the promised benefits of the operation:—

"Phlebotomy clears the eyes, purifies the minds and the brain, makes the marrows warm, clears the bladder, restrains the stomach and sensual desire, opens the sense of hearing, renders the memory fresher, lengthens the voice, sharpens the sense, and diminishes slumbers, softens angry people, takes away anxieties, removes weariness, cures the watery flow of the eyes, encourages digestion, and ministers (to one) healthy feelings."—*Babees Book*, Pt. II, p. 47.

How, as valet, he made the beds; how, as squire, he carried the dishes—putting secretly bits of bread between his hands and the silver dish to stop its burning him—how he arranged the King's table and chamber; and how he was generally to behave;—are they not written in the *Boke of Curtasye's* and John Russell's directions to like officers for like tasks, tho' in the 15th century, in my *Babees Book* (E. E. Text Soc., 1868), p. 313, 324, 129-139, &c.? To that and its index my readers must go for themselves if they care to look into the subject further. I hope to return to it if ever I write Chaucer's life at any length.

§ 11. The importance of Chaucer's connection with the Court cannot be overrated. It shap't his whole life. To it he ow'd the long hopeless love that first call'd out his poetic power; to it, the culture and breadth that foreign travel, French raillery, Petrarch's acquaintance, Italian sky and art, bestow'd on him; to it, his London appointment, with its leisure for study; his familiarity with Court and Camp, all ranks of men; to it we owe those many records of his life and work which we so want in Shakspeare's case.

¹ *Camb. Antiq. Soc.'s Com.*, iii. 186. ² *ib.* p. 185. ³ *ib.* p. 188.

⁴ Each of Edw. IV's squires in 1461-82 was allow'd a servant of his own in court, see p. 64.—*H. Ord.*, p. 45.

Gay and full of adventure the young Valet and Squire's life must have been. But, like the rest of us, he had his skeleton in his cupboard. The shadow of unrequited love was over him; and let those who know,—“Voi che sapete che cos'è amor¹,”—judge what that is.

Assuredly, like the lover in Coleridge's beautiful “*Love*” or Genevieve, with all Chaucer's ease and fun, his happy friendly ways with woman and man, there was one pair of eyes that his dared hardly meet, one step, the rustle of one dress, that set his heart beating, one hand that thrilled him to touch or maybe kiss. For seven long years he loved, and longed to speak. He may some afternoon have harp'd and sung to her:

I told her of the Knight that wore
 Upon his shield a burning brand;
 And that for ten long years he woo'd
 The Lady of the Land.
 I told her how he pined; and ah!
 The deep, the low, the pleading tone
 With which I sang another's love,
 Interpreted my own.—Coleridge, *Works*, 1844, i. 146.

But ‘faltering voice and pausing harp’ disturb'd not her soul with pity. Pity for him was dead in her heart before he spoke, and its foe Cruelty reign'd. Her “assured maner” was too much for him; and instead of Genevieve's blush with love, and timorous eye, the ‘vacant stare’ of Lady Clare Vere de Vere², cast him swooning to the ground, wishing only for his death and then his bier (*Complaint to Pite*). And this was why he sang so long of lovers' pains; and why he said,

And Troilus mot wepe in care colde:
Swich is this world, whoso kan it biholde!
In ech estat is litel hertes reste!
 God leue us for to take it for the beste.—*Book V. st. ccli.*

This was why he could give us only the humorous bird-bit in the *Parliament*, some of Pandarus in the *Troilus*, and a little fun in the *Hous of Fame*, till he'd made himself take all his trouble for the best, and bubbled out into the joyousness of his Prologue and the eight merry Canterbury Tales contemporary with it, as Shakspere did into

¹ Oh Alboni, how divinely you us't to sing it in the *Nozze!*

² Tennyson, *Poems*, 1846, i. 156.

the bird-like chirping fun and rascaldom of his Autolyceus, after the storm and terror of the tragedies of his Third Period. But I must stop. Here's the work of this rainy-dayd, fair-eveningd Sunday, on which I promist to begin my 6-months-put-off Introduction to Shakspeare, and haven't done it. The lovely rose-tinted clouds, the freshend green of the burnt-up grass, the cool evening air, the pleasant scents, that cheerd my Hampstead-Heath walk, all mixt well with Chaucer thoughts. Green his memory is, bright his presence, to us. Long may he be a joy to English-reading men !

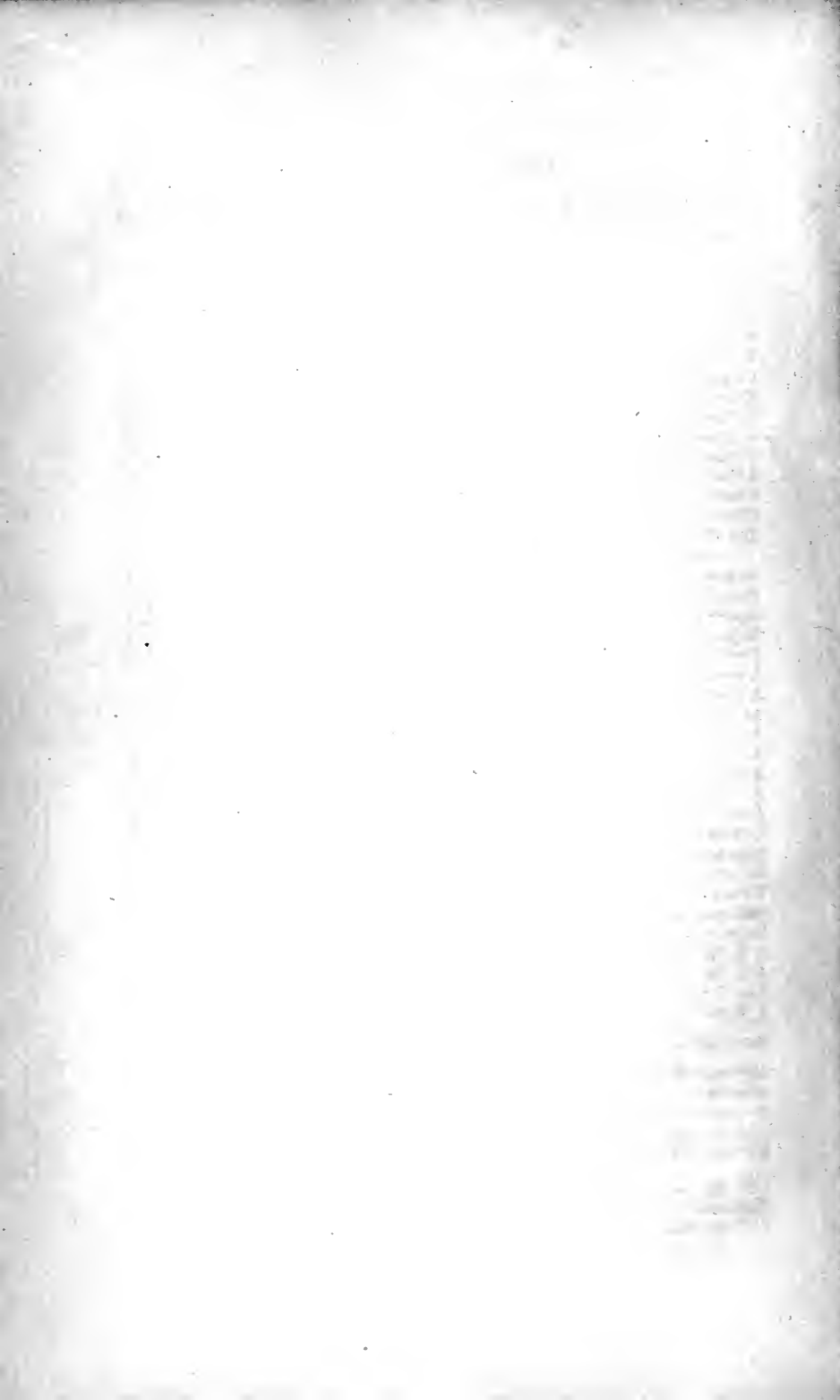
§ 12. With thanks to Miss Isabel Marshall of Bedford for her index, and Mr G. Parker of Oxford for his copy of Ed. II's Household Book, I go off to bed at one in the morning.

3, *St George's Square, London, N.W.*,
August 20, 1876.

EDWARD II'S
HOUSEHOLD ORDINANCES.



ENGLISHT, A.D. 1601.



[*Ashm. MS. 1147, iii. p. 1.*]

ORDINANCES TOUCHING THE KINGES HOUSHOLD
MADE IN THE TYME OF KINGE EDWARDE THE SECONDE;

TRANSLATED OUT OF AN OLD FRENCH COPPY, 13 MARTII, 1601.²*Hostel le Roy Edu. 2.*

³ Steward of the Kings houshold	...	...	fol. 1	[p. 5]
Treasurer of the wardrobe	...	...	2	[p. 6]
Chamberlaine	...	...	2	[p. 6]
Contreroller (<i>sic</i>)	...	...	3	[p. 7]
Cofferer	...	...	4	[p. 8]
Clarke of the Counting table	...	...	4	[p. 8]
Clarke of the Priuy-Seale	...	...	5	[p. 9]
4 Clarke of write to the Priuy Seale	...	...	5	[p. 9]
Clarke purveyor for the great Wardrobe	...	...	6	[p. 9]
Clarke of the Spicery	...	...	6	[p. 10]
The Charge of the Clarke purveyor for the wardrobe, & of the Tailor, etc.	...	...	7	[p. 11]
Serjant vnder-vsher of the Wardrobe	...	...	9	[p. 12]
Porter of the Wardrobe	...	...	9	[p. 12]
Squire fruterer	...	...	10	[p. 13]
Serjant Chandeler	...	...	10	[p. 13]
Two Vallets de Mestier ⁴ to worke the wax	...	...	11	[p. 14]
A confessor for the King & Queene	...	...	11	[p. 14]
A cheife Chaplin or deane of the Chappell	...	...	11	[p. 14]
An Almner	...	...	12	[p. 15]
An Vnder-Almner	...	...	13	[p. 15]
A Vallett of the Almonery	...	...	13	[p. 16]
A Physityan	...	...	13	[p. 16]
A Chyruugian	...	...	13	[p. 16]
Clarke of the Markett Coroner of the Houshold	...	...	14	[p. 17]
Infants which become the Kings wardes	...	...	15	[p. 17]
Esquiers for the Kings mouth	...	...	15	[p. 18]
Esquiers for the Kings Chamber	...	...	15	[p. 18]
Vshers of the Kings Chamber	...	...	16	[p. 18]
Vallets of the Kings Chamber	...	...	16	[p. 19]
Serjants at Armes	...	...	16	[p. 19]
A Knight Marshall	...	...	17	[p. 20]
A Knight cheife-vsher of the Hall	...	...	17	[p. 20]
Two Serjant Vshers of the Hall	...	...	18	[p. 20]
A Fuer	...	...	19	[p. 21]
Marshalls of the Hall	{ 2 Knights } { 2 Serjants }	...	19	[p. 21]
Surveyor of the Dressor	...	...	20	[p. 22]
Assayors	...	...	20	[p. 22]
Esquiers for the Hall	...	...	20	[p. 23]
Clarke of the Pantry & buttry	...	...	21	[p. 23]
An Vnderclarke in those Offices	...	...	21	[p. 23]

¹ The words "at Yorke in Iune y^e xvjth yeare" are struck through by the Translator's own hand, in the general title prefixed to this original MS.—Black.

² by Fra. Tate sec^r. *crossed through*. ³ p. 114 of MS. ⁴ MS. Meshier.

Panterers	fol. 21	[p. 24]
A Waferer	" 23	[p. 25]
The Bakehouse	" 23	[p. 25]
Naper	" 24	[p. 26]
Ewer	" 24	[p. 27]
Launder	" 24	[p. 27]
The Buttlery	" 25	[p. 27]
Clerkes of the Kitchin	" 27	[p. 30]
The Kitchin	" 28	[p. 31]
Larder	" 30	[p. 33]
Poultry	" 31	[p. 35]
Garbager	" 32	[p. 36]
Scullery	" 33	[p. 36]
Saucery	" 33	[p. 37]
Porters	" 34	[p. 38]
Marshalsy	" 34	[p. 38]
Purveyor of the Auenery	" 35	[p. 39]
Serjant Herberjor warden of the kings palfryes	" 36	[p. 39]
A Vallett Herberjour	" 36	[p. 40]
Serjant Harberjour of Sommers & carthorses	" 36	[p. 40]
Vnder him a Vallet Herberjour	" 37	[p. 41]
A Serjant Marshall	" 37	[p. 41]
2 Vallets Purveyors for the Auenery	" 37	[p. 41]
A Vallet Porter for the Garner	" 38	[p. 42]
A Vallet Carnauer	" 38	[p. 42]
24 Somers alias Sumpteres	" 39	[p. 43]
A Hackny man	" 39	[p. 43]
Serjant Marshall for horses	" 39	[p. 43]
Huntsmen	" 40	[p. 44]
A ferreter	" 41	[p. 45]
A Partringer	" 41	[p. 45]
A Bridtaker or Oyselour	" 41	[p. 45]
A Fisher	" 41	[p. 46]
Trumpetours	" 42	[p. 46]
Messengers	" 42	[p. 46]
Archers	" 42	[p. 46]
A Chappeler	" 43	[p. 46]
Order for the K. cheife Boteler	" 43	[p. 47]
Order for Lodging of the K. Servants	" 45	[p. 48]
Order that the Harbingers bee not refused conuenient Lodgings. [<i>The Contents, in the MS, stop here.</i>]	" 46	[p. 49]
[Order that accounts shall be discharged within 3 days	" 46	[p. 49]
Order that Officers shall account daily, or else forfeit their wages	" 46	[p. 50]
Order concerning punishment for neglect of work	" 46	[p. 50]
Order that no Knight be barred the household, nor remain above 3 days at Court without license	" 47	[p. 50]
Order that the ordinances made at Woodstock be observed	" 47	[p. 50]
Order that none shall be allowed in the offices unless holding office (and wearing Royal livery) under pain of imprisonment	" 47	[p. 50]
Order that boys of officers shall diet in the hall. And concerning those who embesil the Kings almes	" 48	[p. 51]
Order that no Valet de Mestier shall have horses at Court unless receiving an allowance for a horse from the King	" 48	[p. 51]

[Order that no Serjant Vallet shall eat out of the hall ...	fol. 48	[p. 51]
Order that no stranger eat in any of the offices, nor be received in them by those of the household ...	48	[p. 51]
Order that no Valet de Mestier but they of the kitchen have any page ...	49	[p. 52]
Order that no Valet de Mestier in the kitchen or any other office give away anything without their leave to whom it appertaineth ...	49	[p. 52]
Order that no Esquire or other meddle with the carriage of any victuals after they are set on the table, except those to whom that service pertains ...	49	[p. 52]
Order that no Knight of the Houshold take livery if he be not holding office ...	49	[p. 52]
Order that the Kinges & Queenes Steward shall examine once a week how many of the Kings & Queens dogs shall have livery ...	49	[p. 52]
Order that Squires & Valets de Mestier have livery when sick ...	50	[p. 52]
Order that the Great Lords, which have their Chamber appointed in the same Court as the King, shall have wine, etc. for their Chamberlaine ...	50	[p. 52]
Order that the Queenes Steward & Thresorer cause the messes to be examined, & the Gens de Mestier belonging to Her Highness meignee; & all the Serjantes be at the Account ...	50	[p. 52]
Order that the King with the Great Lords & the Queen also be served with four courses. All other places of the Houshold to have three courses, save the boys, who shall have two ...	50	[p. 52]
Order that all Palfreours & Somters shall have ij ^d a day. Those of the Houshold who are weak shall be sent to Hospitals & Abbeys which hold under the King ...	50	[p. 52]
Order that no liveree shall be made in no part of the Houshold either of the King or Queen, but the great pantry, buttery, kitchen, larder, & the great houshold for the meignee ...	51	[p. 53]
Order concerning the delivery of presents to the King, and the distribution of fees ...	51	[p. 53]
Order, concerning Foregoers ...	51	[p. 53]
Bribours a nuite ...	53	[p. 55]
Order, that the Kings command that his Marshals should search from week to week for strangers following the Court, be remembered ...	54	[p. 55]
Order concerning the Officers of the Marshalcy of the King's Houshold, that they are to be aided by the Sheriffs Bailiffs sworne for the cuntry the King cometh through ...	54	[p. 55]
Order, that as complaints have been made of mischiefs done in the country where the King goeth, by people which follow the Court, that such people shall avoid the Court ...	54	[p. 56]
That no Sutors shall follow the Court, but such as are in the Coroners Roll of the Marshalsea ...	54	[p. 56]
That none of the Kings meignee keep his wife at the Court or following the Court ...	55	[p. 56]
That no women be there but such as are in chief with the King, or are intituled in the Marshalsy in the Coroner's Roll ...	55	[p. 56]

[Punishment to be inflicted on men & women following the Court without license]	fol. 55	[p. 56]
These points to be proclaimed to the Household at certain times	" 56	[p. 57]
Order concerning the Officers of the Marshaley	" 56	[p. 57]

Ordinance for the State of the Wardrobe and the Account for the Household.

(1) Order that no money be paid to make purveyance, except by the hand of the guardian of the Wardrobe, or by warrant of his letters. That there be always sufficient money in the Wardrobe	fol. 56	[p. 58]
(2) Order: th' account to be had every day, or every other day when the Court sojourneth. Penalties for delaying the account beyond three days	" 57	[p. 58]
(3) Days appointed for Chief Butler to view his office	" 57	[p. 58]
(4) Times appointed for Purveyor of Wardrobe to view his office	" 57	[p. 59]
(5) Forreign Ministers which account in the Wardrobe do so every quarter or half-year	" 57	[p. 59]
Accounts of Wardrobe to be given into the Exchequer once a year, the day after Candlemas	" 57	[p. 59]
(6) Order concerning Ministers that should account to the Wardrobe and come not to the account	" 58	[p. 59]
(7) Clerks of offices to account for their sommes monthly or quarterly, at the discretion of the guardian of the Wardrobe	" 58	[p. 59]
(8) He that is in arrearages at the account to be delivered to the Marshaley	" 58	[p. 59]
(9) Order: last years account being diffuse, the Cofferer to take help and arrange the account speedily	" 58	[p. 59]
That there be a new Cofferer in the xvij th (the following) year	" 58	[p. 59]
(10) Order that names of Houshold be delivered to the Warden & to the Clerk of the Marshaley	" 59	[p. 60]
That the Ministers of the Houshold be fit men, & that there be no rascals in any office	" 59	[p. 60]
(11) Order: payment of things purveyed for Houshold, except the great purveyances & poultry, to be made in the Wardrobe in presence of the Clerks of Offices	" 59	[p. 60]
(12) Order for making purveyances of great feasts at fairs, for the Parliament or great feast	" 59	[p. 60]
(13) Order touching the purveyance of herring & great fish	" 60	[p. 60]
(14) Order for the purveyance of wines against the Parliament or solemn feast	" 60	[p. 61]
(15) Order concerning the Clerks of the Marshaley. There shall be two, the Clerk of the March, and the Clerk of the Avenery	" 61	[p. 61]
(16) Order concerning the Bakers	" 61	[p. 61]
(17) The King's Offerings of the great penny daily to be remembered	" 61	[p. 62]
Offerings at All Saints, New-year's-tide, Easter & Whitsun-tide, Feast of S' Thomas at Canterbury, the Day of the Great Friday, Easter-day, and S' John the Evangelist in Christmas	" 62]	[p. 62]

EDWARD II's HOUSEHOLD ORDINANCES,

JUNE, 1323.

(ENGLISHT BY FRANCIS TATE, MARCH 13, 1601.)

N. B. **I**n as much as the officers of the houshold of *our* Lord the kinge have alwaies heretofore been uncertaine what thei should doe, & what thei should take of the kinge, bi reason of their offices, in respect wherof there¹ can be no examination of those offices, nor the officers charged as thei ought to be, to the great damage & dishonour of the kinge, & disorder of his houshold: *Our* Lord the kinge, havinge regard to the estate of his houshold *which* is not wel kept, & to his goodes otherwise spent then thei ought, gave *commaundement* to monsieur Barthemew de Badelesmere, steward of his houshold, monsieur Hughe le Dispenser, Chamberlaine, Sir Roger de Northburghe, Thresorer, & Sir Gilbert de Wiggeton, Countrollerollour of his wardrobe, that thei should ordaine some remedi therof. And thei, bi vertue of that *commaundement*, ordained that *which* ensueth, for amendement of the former defaultes, And their ordinances were redde before the kinge, & assented unto, in the presence of the Archbishop of yorke, The bishop of Elye, Chauncelour of England, the bishop of Norwich, the bishop of Salisburye, Monsier Henry de Scrope, & Monsier Henry Spigurnel, Justices.

These did ordaine, that the kinge should have :

A stewarde of his housholde :

1. This stewarde shall be a man of good sufficiency ; & if he be a Banneret, then he shal have one knight, three esquires, & a clarke

¹ MS. their.

for the pleas belonging to the stewardship, allowed diet in the halle. & he shall take everi night for his chamber, one sextier¹ of wine, xij candels, two tortis,² one tortis³ for wine, & one torche, & more when he shal need them. He shal have litter al the yeare, & fuel for dinner time, of the usher of the halle, from Al *Saintes* even to easter-even. His chamberlaine shal have for liverye a darre⁴ of bred, a galon of ale, a messe de grosse⁵ from the kitchen, & dinners & suppers when he wil have them. His fees⁶ shalbe xx markes bi the yeare, paiable at the feastes of Newyères-tide & whit-sontide bi equal portions.

If he be but an ordinari knight, he shal take fees & robes as other ordinary knightes of the household doe, & have diet in the halle for two esquiers & a clarke.

A Thresorer of the wardrobe.

2. The thresorer of the wardrobe shal have one chaplein, one clarke, & two esquirs, allowed their diet in the halle; & he shal take for his chambre a sextier of wine, twelve candels, two tortis,⁷ one tortis⁸ for wine, & one torche & more when he shall need it, litere al the yeare, fuel for dinner⁹ time from al *Saintes* even til ester-even of the Vsher of the halle, & dinners & sopers when he wil. His livere for his chamberlaine shalbe a darre of bredde, a galon of beare, & a messe de grosse from the kitchen, & Robes in cloth for himselfe, or els sixtene markes by the yere, at New yeares-tide & whit-sontide bi equal portions.

A chamberlaine.

3. The Chamberlaine, if he be a Banneret, shal have one knight & three esquiers allowed their diet in the halle, & he shal take for his chambre halfe a sextire of wine, xij candels, ij tortis,⁷ & one

¹ '*Sextier*. Looke *Septier*.' '*Septier de vin*. Containes eight pints.' '*Sextaire*: m. An auncient Romane measure, containing somewhat more then one pint.'—Cotgrave.

² MS. cakes *crossed through*. '*Tortis de cire*. A wreathed Linke, or great candle of wax; most in vse about Candlemas.'—Cotgrave, A.D. 1611.

³ MS. cake *crossed through*.

⁴ '*Dare*, a huge big bellie; also, *Dole*.'—Cotgrave.

⁵ large, full, mess or meal?

⁶ p. 2.

⁷ MS. cakes *crossed through*.

⁸ MS. cake *crossed through*.

⁹ MS. meale *crossed through*.

torche, littere al the yeare, & fuel for dinner-time, of the Vsher of the chamber; & dinners & sopers with the kinge. He shal have for his Chamberlaines livere, a darre of bred, a galon of beare, a messe de grosse from the kitchen, & fees & robes as a Banneret of the houshold: That is, for fees, xx markes, & for robes xvj markes bi the yeare, if he be not served *with* cloth.

If he be but an ordinari knight, he shal take fees & robes as an ordinary knight of the houshold, & shal¹ have two esquiers allowed their diet in the halle.

A contreroller.

4. The Contrerollour ought to keepe a countre-roll against the tresorer of the warderobe, of al that is received in, or issueth out of, the warderobe, & testefy it in the xcheker upon the thresorers account. And shalbe at the receipt of the wines in grosse, & shall survei al the offices of the houshold, as the pantery, Bottery, celler, larder, Spicerye, avenerie, & other offices, that the wines & other vittailles *which* he shal finde in the *said* offices be good & fit for the expenses of the houshold according to their prises. And if he finde ani vittailles insufficient, he shal shewe it at the next account before the stewarde & thresorer, & shal sue to them til it be amended according to reason. He² ought to² go into al the offices everi munday, to see the remaines, & examine whether the remaines & expence of the weeke past agree with the receites of the former weeke. He shal be in the kitchen when the flesh is cut out, & the fish parted, as often as he thinkes fit. He shalbe warned with the chiefe vsher, a knight, & the clarke of the kitchen, to see that the flesh & fish *which* is bought be good, & the messes cut out in due manner according to thordinance therof made at th' account, & the fish parted as it ought to be. And he shalbe everi dai, *without* some resonable excuse, at the *accountes* with the Steward & thresorer. The contrerouler of the warderobe shal have a clarke & an esquier allowed diet in the halle, And shal take for his chambre, halfe a sextier of wine, vj candels, two tortis,³ & one torche, & litter al the yere longe, fewel for dinner-time of the vsher of the halle. His

¹ p. 3. ²⁻² MS. should *crossed through*. ³ MS. cakes *crossed through*.

chamberlaines liveri shalbe a darre of bred, a galon of beere, a messe de grosse from the kitchen, & robes in cloth, or viij markes bi the yeare, at newyeres-tide & whitsontide bi equal portions. Whether he be sicke or wel, he shal have his livery for his dinner, two darres¹ of bredde, j. pitcher of wine, two messe de grosse from the kitchin, & a messe of rost; & he shal have xv^d a day wages til he be advanced bi the kinge.

A Cofferer.

5. The Cofferer shalbe plased bi the Thresorer, & he shalbe allowed diet in the halle for one esquier, & shal take for his chambre half a sextier of wine, six candells, ij tortis, & one torche, & for the Counting table xij candels, & more when need shal require, & litre al the yeare, & fuel for diner time of the Vsher of the halle, & a livere for his Chamberlaine of one dare of bredde, one galon of beere, a messe de grosse from the kitchin. And whether he be wel or sicke, he shal take for his dinner the like livere as the Controler, that is, two darres of bred, a pitcher of wine, two messes de gros from the kitchen, & a messe of rost, & al other expenses in Court, of the thresorer.

And two clarkes of the Counting table.

6. The clarkes of the counting table must be able to write & doe al thinges that concerne the warderobe & the account therof under the cofferer. Each of them shal take for wages vij. ob. a day, or iiij^d ob. as his state shalbe, at the discretion of the thresorer, & ij robes in cloth yeareli, or xvj^s viij^d in mony. And thei, together with the Controlours clarke, who shal ly al of them in the warderobe, shal have amongst them,² for their coch,² two pitchers of wine, vj candels, & two tortis, with litere al the yeare, & fuel at dinner time, of the Vsher of the halle. And if thei dine in the warderobe for ani certaine reason, or bi the thresorers licence, two of them shal have a livere for diner & manger in the warderobe, eache the livere of a serjant, that is, a darre of bred, half a pitcher of wine, half a galon of beere, a messe de grosse from³ the kitchin, & a messe of roste; & be thei sicke or wel, this shalbe their liveree.

¹ p. 4. ²⁻² *These words are substituted for against there going to bedde.*

³ p. 5.

A clarke of the privy Seale.

7. The clarke which shalbe warden or keper of the privy seale must be a man of sufficiency for that purpose. He shal have diet in the hal for one esquier, & shal take for his chambre half a sextier of wine, six chandels, two tortis & one torche, & litter al the yeare, & wood for dinner time of the Vsher of the halle: he shal have this liverie for his chamberlaine, a darre of bred, a galon of beare, a messe de grosse from the kitchin, & robes in cloth, or viij markes bi the yeare, at the feastes of new yeres tide & whitsondaye, bi equal portions. And whether he be sicke or welle, his livery shalbe ij darre of bred, a pitcher of wine, two messes de grosse from the kitchin, & a messe of rost; & he shal have wages til he be advanced.

And iiij clarkes to write to the privy seale.

8. Thei shal have altogether for their chambre, two pichers of wine, vj candels, two tortiz, & littre for al the yeare, & fier for dinner time, of the Vsher of the halle. And if thei dine or eate in the household for ani certein cause, two of them shal have a livery at dinner, & each a livery to eate, as the clarkes of the Counting house before-named. If ani of them be sicke or wel, let him have the same livery. Eache of them shal have wages, more or lesse according to their estate, at the discretion of the steward & thresorer til thei be advanced bi the kinge. Thei shal have two robes bi the yeare, or mony according to their wages.

¹A clarke purveior for the great warderobe.

9. The clarke purveior for the greate warderobe ought to lie in the warderobe when he is in Court, & shal have diet in the halle for one esquier. And shal take for his chambre, a pitcher of wine, iiij candels, one tortiz, & liveri for a chamberlaine, to keepe his bedde, of a darre of bred, a galon of beare, a messe de grosse from the kitchen. And whether he be wel or sicke in Court, he may take two darres of bred, a galon of wine, ij messe de grosse from the kitchen, a messe of rost, & two robes by the yeare in cloth, or viij markes in

¹ p. 6.

mony. And out of the court he shal have his fee, that is, xx^{li} bi the yeare, til the kinge have given him C markes rent, & have served the kinge at his owne charges out of the court, & done that *which* belongeth to him to doe, according to the *statut* made touching his office.

A clarke of the Spicery.

10. The clarke of the spicery is chief vsher of the warderobe, & he shal receive of the Clarke *purveieur* for the great warderobe, wax, naperie, linnen cloth, canvas, *specerie*, & al manner of other things *which* appertaigne to his office, bi endenture, making expresse mention of the prise of the elle, the waight, & the charge. He shal cause the wax to be wayed *which* the chaundelour shal worke, & wayghed againe when it is wrought. He shal survey, & cause to be written bi his under-clarke, the liveres of Chaundelary that shalbe everi day in the warderobe, & shal survey the day after the laying up of the torches & tortiz, of wine, & of the morters, He shal make a brief everi day of the *parcels* of al manner of things delivered & spent in his office the dai before, & the prise, & shal aunswere for the same at th'account ¹of the houshold. He shal survey the cariages belonging to the warderobe, as wel for the coffres & other things of his office, as for the bedes of the clarkes of the warderobe *which* should be caried. He shal levy in his rolle the resonable cariages & portages in the kinges jornies. He shal take for his chambre, a pitcher of wine, two candels; one tortiz, & three candels for his office, & littere al the yeare, & fuel for dinner time, of the Vsher of the halle. And whether he be sick or wel, his liveriee shalbe a darre of bred, half a picher of wine, half a galon of beare, a messe de grosse from the kitchin, & messe of rost, & iiij^d a day wages til he be advanced bi the kinge,—& he shal have no more bi reson that he shal have cariage for his bed in the warderobe,—& two robes in cloth, or xvj^s viij^d by the yere in mony.

¹ p. 7.

The charge of *the* Clarke purveieur for *the* great wardrobe, & of *the* tailour, armorer, pavilioner, & confectioner of spices.

11. And in as much as it is found, upon good & faithful examination, *that our* lord the kinge hath heretofore suffered great damages & losse, for that al thinges that come for the houshold by dilivory of the clarke & purveieur of his great warderobe, as wax, spicery, & other thinges belonging to his office, have been wasted & il spent, for want of setting downe the certenti of the price & parcels every day, upon the account of the houshold, before the steward & tresorer, as in other offices: It is ordained & assented to in the kinges behalf, & the bishops, the steward, thresorer, & Chamberlaine, & others of the counsel, that the clarke purveieur of the great warderobe, from hence forwarde shal deliver al thinges touching th' office of the spicerie, to the clarke of the same office, as of wax, gros spicery, linnen cloth, canvas, & al other ¹thinges, bi good indenture, makinge mention of al the parcels so to him delivered, together wthe prise & the costes; & the clarke of the Spicery, thus charged in certaine, shalbe every day at th' accountes of the houshold, as the clarkes of other offices are, to present & account before the steward & thresorer for al the parcels, & the prise of everi thinge which shalbe delivered & spent out of his office in the houshold that day. And that the waightes of the warderobe & of the spicery should agree together, & be such as are ordinary within the Relme of England. In the same sort ought this clarke & purveieur of the great warderobe to charge the kinges Taylour, armurer, pavillioner, & confectioner of spices, bi indentures makinge mention of the price & quantiti of thinges bi him delivered out, & that one parte of those endentures should remaine with the same Clarke. And the parcels of the other liveries, & the kinges giftes, which shal passe from out of his office, shalbe shewed foure times bi the yeare, to the thresorer of the warderobe, so as he mai be fulli certified of the state of *that* office, & charge duly those clarkes of the spicery, the tailour, armurer, pavillioner, & confectioner of spices, upon the accountes which shal

¹ p. 8.

hereafter be made before the *said* thresorer in the warderobe, aswel of the issuing out of those *parcels* so receved of the *said* clarke, as of the costes *which* thei have laied out to the maker & worker of them. And that the same clarke *purveiour* shal remaine in Court as much as his office wil *permit* him, unles he have special licence of the kinge. And the clarke of the spicery shal have a clarke to aide him to do those things *which* *pertaine* to his office, & to write the *parcels* of the laying out *which* he shal make of al manner things in that office, according to thadvice¹ & ordinance of the *said* chief clarke; & everi day he shal have for his liverree, a darre of bred, a galon of beare, a messe de grosse from the kitchin, & a clarkes robe yereli, or xx^s. in mony.

And a Serjant vnder-vsher of *the* warderobe.

12. The Serjant under-usher of the warderobe shal lodge in the warderobe, & lye within the vsher of the warderobe, to keepe al things safe that are within; & he shalbe aunswerable if any *peril* *querra* happen thorough his default, & shal fetch² the liverrees of thoffices for al of the warderobe, & he shal attend their *com-maundementes*, & shal take for co^h. a galon of ale & three candels. And whether he be wel or sicke, he shal take for liverree, a darre of bred, half a picher of win, half a galon of beere, a messe de gros from *the* kitchin, & a messe of rost. And iiij^d ob. wages bi the day, two robes a yeare en cloth, or xl^s. in mony; & his bed shalbe caried in the cariages of the warderobe.

A porter of the warderobe.

13. The porter of the warderobe shal carry the coffers, & other harnis of the wardrobe, to the cartes, & shal lode them & unlode them, & shalbe upon the cariage in the way, & shal watch a *nightes*, if the cariages be in the cuntry & ly without dores. He shal have ij^d a day wages in the rolle of the spicery, over & above his standing wages, in respect of watching & travel. And he shal [have] a vallet de mestier his robe yereli in cloth, or a marke in mony, for

¹ p. 9.

² *querre crossed through.*

shoes *iiij*^s *viiij*^d, at two seasons in the yeare as a Vallet de mestier, at newyeres tide & whitsontide, bi equal portions.

¹A Squire fruiterer.

14. The squire fruiterer shal receve electuaries, confections, & other spiceries, figs, & reasons, of the clarke of the spicery for the kinges mouth, & shal make the clarke a brief everi day of that *which* shalbe spent the dai before, as wel of the spiceries & fruit so receved of the clarke, as of appels, peres, cheries, & other fruit *which* the fruiterer him-self shal provide. The fruit *which* the purveour him-self shal provide, together with the costes laid out about the cariage therof, shalbe surveied bi the same clarke before any be spent. And if he gyve tallies to *them that* sold them, he shal deliver the foiles to the same clarke ymmediateli uppon the view, that the tallies mai be paied in the wardrobe. And this esquier fruiterer shal take every night for his coch. a galon of beare & three candels, & for his office *iiij* candels more. He shal have *vij*^d ob. a daye wages, *ij* robes in cloth, or *xl*^s. in mony. And be he wel or sicke, he shal have *vij* darres of bred, half a picher of wine, half a galon of beere, a messe de grosse from the kitchin, & a messe of rost. He shal have a vallet under him, that shal have meate, drinke, & shoes, as an other vallet of the mestier of the houshold shal have.

A serjant chaundelor.

15. The serjant chaundelor shal receve the wax & lightes, bi waight from the clarke of the spicery, & shal cause *them* to be wrought accordinge to thassise ordained bi statut; & the wax & lightes so wrought, shal waye againe in the presence of the same clarke, & therof shal make the liveree, & serve the houshold bi view of the same clark or his under-clarke, so as at th'account he mai knowe the daies expenses. And the chaundelor shal make his liveree everi dai in the wardrobe, before meate, or as sone after as the *serjant* & clarke be not hindered from serving the kinge & his houshold. He shal take for his coch. a galon of beare & three candels. And whether he be wel or il, he shal take for liveree, ²one darre of

¹ p. 10.

² p. 11.

bred, half a picher of wine, half a galon of beare, a messe de grosse from the kitchin, & a messe of rost. And vij^d ob. for wages, & ij robes bi the yeare in cloth, or xlvj^s viij^d in mony.

Two vallets de mestier to worke *the* wax.

16. Two valetes of the misterī shal worke *the* waxe under the serjant, & shal take everi dai thei worke, for livere, two darres of bred, two galons of beere, & two messes de gros from the kitchin; & each of them shal take yereli a robe in cloth, or a marke in mony, & for shoes, iiij^s viij^d bi the yeare. And be thei wel or il, thei shal take for livere, one darre of bred, a galon of beere, & a messe de grosse from the kitchen.

A confessor for *the* kinge.

17. The confessor for the kinge, & his companioñ, shal take everi day for liveree, iij darres of bred, two pichers of wine, iij galons of beere, three messes from the kitchin, wherof one shalbe flesh upon flesh daies; & iij candels, one tortis, & litere for their bedes al the yere, of the vsher of the halle, & fuel for their meate al the yeare, & for the chambor at dinner time, from al Saintes even til Easter, from the scullery, & livery for robes & bedes from the great wardrobe, & for saddles, botes, linnen cloth, & other smal necessities for their bodies, or mony from the wardrobe, at the discretion of the steward & thresorer. And hay & otes, litter & shoing, & other necessities for iiij horses, & wages for iij boies, each j^d. ob., & robes for a keu¹ to dresse his vitel; he shal eate with his master, & the three boies shal have iij robes in cloth, or x^s bi the yeare for each of them; & for eache of them, iiij^s viij^d for shoes at two seasons in the yeare, & two clothes & two towels,² of the clarke of the spicery, at New yeres tide & whitson tide.

A chief chaplin, or Deane of *the* Chappel.

18. The chief chaplin shal have diet in the halle for one squier; he shal have wages of the kinge til he ³be advanced bi the kinge.

¹ MS. a a keu [Fr. *queu, queue*] (coke crossed through).
³ p. 12.

² MS. twoels.

And v. chapleins, wherof each shal have vij^d ob. a day; & six clarkes, each of them shal have iiij^d ob. a day, til thei be advanced bi the kinge. And amongst them al, thei shal take for their coeh, two pichers of wine, ij galons of beere, vj candels, a tortis, & litere for their bedes al the yere, & fuel for their chamber at dinner time, of the Vsher of the hal. And the chief Chapleyn, whether he be wel or il, shal take for liveree, ij darres of bred, j. picher of wine, two messes de grosse from the kitchin, & one messe of rost. And each of the other chaplins & clarkes, whether he be wel or il, shal have for liveree, j. darre of bred, one galon of beere, a messe de gros from the kitchin, & a messe of rost. And the chief chapleyn shal take yereli, ij robes of cloth, or viij markes in mony. And everi other chapleyn yereli, ij robes in cloth, or three markes & a half in mony; & everi clarke yerli, ij robes en cloth, or xl^s. in mony.

And for the Chappel, everi night shalbe allowed for the liverees at vespres & complyn, vj candels, if need bee, & cerges every seven-night or fiftene dayes, as need shal require, & the chief chapleyn wil aunswere it.

An almoner or Almner.

19. The Almner chapleyn shal have diet in the hal for a squier, & shal take for his chambre, a picher of wine, two candels, one tortis, litre al the yere, & fuel at dinner time, of the vsher of the halle; & whether he be wel or il, he shal take for liveree, ij. darres of bred, a picher of wine, two messes de gros from the kitchin, & a messe of rost; two robes bi the yere in cloth, or eight markes in mony. He shal have wages at vij^d ob. til he be advanced bi the kinge, & everi day of sojorne, xiiij. darres of bredde, xiiij gallons of beere, in the rolle of the panterer & boteler, & xiiij messes from the kitchin, for the Almners office. And every day that the ¹kinge travelleth, he shal give xiiij^s in mony out of the warderobe, & it shal be entered in the great rolle of the houshold expenses at the ende of the day.

An vnder almoner.

20. A clarke shalbe under the Almoner, who shal under him have regarde to the Almes & he shal have his diet in the hal, & shal

¹ p. 13.

take iij^d a day in the rolle of the marshalce for his hakeneyes charge, til he be advanced bi the kinge; his boy shal live of the Almes. He shal have yereli, one robe in cloth, or xx^s in mony. And whether he be wel or il, he shal take for liveree, j. darre of bred, j. galon of beere, & one messe de grosse from the kitchin.

An a vallet of the Almonery.

21. The vallet of the mistery of the same office shal eate in the hal amongst other valletes of misterie, & shal take yereli a robe in cloth, or a marke in mony; for shoes, iiij^s by the yere. And be he wel or il, he shal take for liveree, j. darre of bred, j. galon of beere, & a messe de grosse from the kitchin.

A phisition.

22. The phisition shal take for al the daies livere, iij darres of bred, one galon of wine, one galon of bere, iij messes de gros from the kitchin, & ij messes of rost. for his chambre, iij candels, one tortis; & litere al the yere, of the Vsher of the hal, & fuel for his vitail al the yere, & for his chambre at dinner, of the scullery. And two robes by the yere in cloth, or viij markes in mony; hay, oates, litere, shewing, for iij horses, & wages for iij boies, each at j^d. ob. til he be advanced bi the kinge.

A Cyrurgion.

23. The surgion shal have his diet everi day in the hal, if he be not otherwise hindered bi some busines certified before the Steward & thresorer. And then he shal ¹have his livery as a knight of the houshold, whether he be wel or il, that is to say, two darres of bred, one picher of wine, two messes de gros from the kitchin, & one messe of rost. And shal take everi dai for his chamber, one picher of wine, three candels, one tortis, litere al the yeare, & fuel for dinner time, of the Vsher of the hal. He shal have xij^d a day wages til he be advanced bi the kinge, & ij robes yereli in cloth, or viij markes in mony. for thinges medicinal, he shal have xl^s. bi the yeare.

¹ p. 14.

A clarke of the Market Coroner of the houshold.

24. The clarke of the market Coroner of the kinges houshold shal examine the assise of bred, wine, & bere, & take th'assay of al manner of mesures, waightes, & elnes within the vierge & our lord the kinges presence. He shal cause offendors which have broken thassise, to be punished ; & them which are found with faulse * mise mesures, by amerciament,* or bi fines of every offendour according to his fault. He shal not charge citties, boroughs, & other townes, but onli for one night & one day, unles it be thorough the default of the people of the towne, & then he shal not continew in that towne above two daies at the townes charges. The mony which he shal levy in his office bi fines & amerciamentes, he shal trewly send daili into the warderobe. And when the kinge goeth into the cuntri, he shal goe before, the same jornies as the kinge doth, to do his office. And he shal make them brewe & bake against the kinges comming, & his housholdes according to the assise. And he shal cause to be cried in everi market towne within the vierge, the assise of bred, wine, beare, hay, oates. This Clarke shalbe the stewardes Countroller for pleas of the halle, & purveieur for cariages, & shal have a clarke under him, who shal have his diet in the halle. And the clarke of the market contreroller shal receive al the mony rising of the pleas of the halle, before the steward & mareshal, & shal deliver them, together with the stretes, into the warderobe, & there ¹shal account for the same mony every weeke. And when he shalbe in the Court, he shal take for his liveree in his chamber, one picher of wine, two candels, a tortis, two robes bi the yeare in cloth, or iiij markes & an half bi the yeare. And whether he be wel or il, he shal have for his liveree, j. darre of bred, one galon of bere, a messe de grosse from the kitchin, & a messe of rost.

Infantes which become the kinges wardes.

25. The infantes which happen to be the kinges wardes, shal have wages, & liverrees, & al other necessaries, according to their estate, & the advisement & discretion of the Steward & thresorer.

¹ p. 15.

These wardes shalbe put from their wages & liverees as sone as thei have their landes, or the kinge have given or sold them, & then thei shalbe kept at the costes of them to whom thei are given or solde.

Esquiers for the kinges mouth.

26. The kinge shal have a squier surveiour & warden of the *asseour de sa table* viandes for his mouth, & to take the assay at his table. And an esquier to carve before the kinge, & a squire to serve him of his cuppe. These three esquires shal take, eache of them for his chamber at night, half a picher of wine, two candels, & a tortis, litere al the yere, & fuel for dinner time, of the vsher of the chambre. And each of them, be he wel or il, shal have liverree as a serjant, that is to say, a darre of bred, half a picher of wine, half a galon of beere, a messe de gros from the kitchin, & a messe of rost. Eache of them shal have vij^d ob. a daie wages, & two robes in cloth, or xl^s. in mony.

Esquiers for the kinges chamber.

27. The kinge shal have xij squiers, besides the infantes de gard, & the three esquiers before-named. Of these xij squiers, one shalbe assayour in the chambre. And each of them shal have vij^d ob. wages every day, & ij robes in cloth, or xl^s yerely in mony. And each of them, be he wel or il, shal take for liverree, j. darre of bred, one galon of beere, one messe de gros from the kitchin, & one messe of rost.

Vshers of the kinges chamber.

28. The kinge shal have two squires ushers of the chamber, wherof the one shalbe serjant purveiour for fuel, & litere for the office of the chambre. He shal count the messes everi dai in the chamber, & shal witnesse it daili at th' *accountes* of the houshold in the wardrobe. Bi whose testimoni the officers shal have allowances of their offices uppon the account. & this serjant shal take for his coeñ. a galon of here, iij candels; & his wages shalbe vij^d ob. a day, & two robes yereli in cloth, & xl^s in mony. And whether he

be wel or il, he shal take for liverree, j. *darre* of bred, one galon of beere, a messe de gros from the kitchin, & a messe of rost. & the sarjant purveieur shal have a vallet de mestier to aide him to make purveiance, who shal have ij^d a day wages in the rolle of the kitchin.

Vallets of the kinges chambre.

29. And eight valletes of the chambre, foot men, who shal serve in the chambre, makinge bedes, holding & carying torches, & divers other thinges which he & the Chamberlaine shal commaunde them. These valetes shal eate in the chambre before the kinge. And each of the[m], be he wel or il, shal have for livere, j. *darre* of bred, one galon of beere, a messe de gros from the kitchen, & yerely a robe in cloth or a marke in mony; & for shoes, iiiij^s viij^d, at two sesons in the yere. And if any of them be sent out of the Court in the kinges busines, bi his commaundement, he shal have iiiij^d a day for his expences.

Serjants at armes.

30. The kinge shal have xxx serjants at armes, sufficientli armed & mounted, that is to say, eache of them ¹one horse for armes, one hakeny & somter. Thei shal daili ride armed before the kinges person when he passeth thorough the cuntri, if thei be not otherwise commaunded bi the kinge or the stewarde. Their wages shalbe allowed daili in the marshals rolle when thei be in Court, in this sort; each of them which hath an horse for armes, shal have xij^d a day. And if those horses be rendred into the wardrobe, or dye in the kinges service, there shal be allowed viij^d in the same rolle til he have an other horse for armes. And as sone as his horse so dead or rendred shalbe restored, a certaine dai shalbe assigned him bi the discretion of the Steward or thresorer, to have his horse for armes reddi to serve the kinge, as appertaineth. And if he have him not reddi against that day, then let him be clerly put out of wages til he have him. And if he sel or give awai his horse, let him also be put out of wages til he be provided of an other sufficient horse, & then he shal have wages as before. Of these xxx serjantes, fowre,

¹ p. 17.

to be named bi the kinge, shal alwaies be attendant upon the vshers of the chamber, to aide the two ushers : & thei shal ly without the vshers, but as neere them as may be. And thei shal have for coch. a picher of wine, ij candels, a tortis. And the xxvj sergeantes shal ly in the halle, that thei mai be redy when the kinge shal neede them. And thei shal have for coch, iij pichers of wine, vj candels, j tortis ; & eache of the xxx serjantes shal have ij robes in cloth, or xlvj^s viij^d yereli, a messe de grosse from the kitchin, & a messe of rost.

A knight marshal.

31. The knight which is for the Earle marshal, the clarke, & the serjeant, shal have their diet in the hal, without any thinge els of the kinge.

A knight chief vsher of the halle.

32. ¹The knight chief Vsher of the halle shall see that the lisse of the halle be wel kept bi the sergeantes & vallet ushers as thei ought, & shal survey that the halle be welle & honorabli served, & that none take their meate there² but such as ought of right, saving strangers, who must alwaies be receved & honored as thei ought to be. He should daily goe into the offices of the houshold, & survey that the thinges sent in by the purveiors be sufficient, & according to the achate or prise. And that none be suffred in those offices, but such as should be there. He shalbe allowed diet in the halle for an esquier, who shal take for his chambre a picher of wine, iij candels, one tortis, & littere al the yere, & fuel for dinner time, & a liveree for his chamberlain, which shalbe one darre of bred, a galon of beere, a messe de grosse from the kitchin, & a messe of rost ; for fees, x markes bi the yere, at Michaelmas & Easter, & ij robes yerly in cloth, or viij markes in mony, at newyers tyde & whitsontide, bi equal portions.

Two serjants ushers of the halle.

33. One of the serjeant vshers of the halle shalbe purveiour of fuel & littere for the office of the halle, & shal make liverrees of

¹ p. 18.

² MS. their.

littere, & fuel to *them* of the household, which ought of right to have it. Both these *sergeantes* shal keepe the lusse of the halle, & shal daily count the messes in the halle,—one, one meale, & an other at the other meale,—& thei shal witnesse *them* at the account. Each of *them* shal take for cochi, a galon of beere, iij candels, & vij^d ob. a day wages, Two robes yerely in cloth, or xlvj^s viij^d in mony. And be thei wel or il, thei shal have for liverree, j. darre of bredde, half a picher of wine, half a galon of beere, a messe de grosse from the kitchen, & a messe of rost. And thei shal have two valletes de *mestier* under *them*, who shal keepe ¹the lusse of the halle, & shal aide the serjant *purveior* to make *purveiance* of fuel & litter when need shal be. One of these shal have regarde to the lusse under the serjant, one at one meale, & the other at an other meale, amongst the other valletes de *mestier*. And being out of the court about their office, each of *them* shal have ij^d a day in the kitchin rolle. And each of *them*, be he wel or sicke, shal have for his liverree, a darre of bredde, a galon of beere, a messe de grosse from the kitchin, & yerely a robe in cloth, or a mark in mony, & iij^s iij^d for shoes.

A fuer.²

34. The vallet fuer shalbe under the knight who is chief usher of the halle, he shal keepe the bankins, & make clene the *perchers*,³ & make reddi the halle. He shal eate in the halle amongst the valletes de *mestier*, without takinge ani thinge els of the kinge. And, be he wel or il, he shal have liverree as a vallet de *mestier*. [See p. 14.]

Marshals of the hal { 2. knights.
2. serjants.

35. There shalbe two knightes Marshals of the halle. One of the knight marshals shal be harbinger, & the other shal looke to the hal. When lodginges are provided, & the court staires at ani place, both of *them* shal attende in the hal, and place people there according as their estate requireth, so as the one shalbe continualli

¹ p. 19.

² ? *Fuarium, Fodrum, pabulum, fourrage, foin, paille, litière pour les chevaux.*—D'Arnis.

³ *percher* is a large candle : see *Babees Book Index*.

passing betwixt the hall & the offices at one meale, & the other at the other meale. Each of these shal take for his chamber, a picher of wine, ij candels, & two tortiz betwixt them both. And if thei be wel or il, there livery shalbe ij darres of bredde, a picher of wine, ij messes de gros from the kitchin, one messe of roste: for fees, 10 markes, two robes by the yeare in cloth, or viij markes bi the yeare in mony, & littere & fuel as the knight that is vs her hath. And There shalbe two serjantes marshals of the halle, wherof one shalbe harbinger, & the other shal attende the halle. And when the Court remaines at any place & lodgings are provided, both shal waite in the hall, & set downe the people according to their degrees, as the knight marshals doe. Each of these shall take for his chambre, a galon of beere, three candels; &, be thei wel or il, their liveree shalbe one darre of ¹ bredde, half a picher of wine, half a galon of ale, a messe de grosse from the kitchen, & a messe of rost; vij^d ob. a day for wages, two robes yerely in cloth, or xlvj^s viij^d in mony.

A surveior of *the* dresser.

36. A serjant surveior of the dresser for the hall, who shal keas advise the cookes for their service thereafter, as men of great estate & others shalbe set in the halle. He shal take for coch, a gallon of ale & three candels; and, be he wel or il, he shal have for liveree, j. darre of bred, half a picher of wine, half a galon of bere, a messe de grosse from the kitchin, a messe of rost, vij^d ob. a day for wages, two robes yereli in cloth, or xlvj^s viij^d in mony.

Assaiors.

37. Three esquiers assaiors of the messe in the hal, ought to sett the messes in the halle, & that with as good advisement as thei can, so as men of estate & others be servid according to their estate, & carry away none of the vittail but whether of right thei ought. Each of these shal have for coch, a gallon of ale, ij candels, vij^d ob. a day wages, two robes in cloth yerely, or xl^s in mony. And, be thei wel or il, he shal have for livery, j. darre of bred, one galon of ale, a messe de grosse from the kitchin, & a messe of rost.

Esquiers for *the halle*.

38. And foure & twenty esquiers, besides the squiers for the chamber & al the officers of the household, who shal serve in the halle, & do al other thinges belonging to their estates, bi the commaundement of the steward & of the thresorer, or of them *that* hold their places. Eache of these shal take vij^d ob. a day wages, two robes yerely in cloth, or xl^s in mony. And, be he wel or ill, he shal have for livery, one darre of bred, one galon of ale, one messe de grosse from the kitchen, & a messe of rost.

¹A clarke of the paintry & buttery.

39. And a chief clarke of the paintry & buttery, who shal make briefs of his office, & aunswere everi dai, at the count of the house, of *parcelles* delivered, & al other thinges which pertaigne to his office. He shalbe at the receit of the bred, wine, ale, & shal survey & examin that thei be of such waight, mesure, & valew as thei ought to be; & if their be ani fault, let him shew it to the Sovereignes, that thei mai cause it to be amended, if he him self can not; & he shal serve every day at the one meale & the other. He shal have for cochⁿ, a picher of wine, ij candels, j. tortis. And, be he wel or il, j. darre of bredde, half a picher of wine, half a galon of ale, a messe de grosse from the kitchen, a messe of rost, vij^d ob. a day for wages, & two robes yerely in cloth, or xlvj^s viij^d in mony.

An under clarke in those offices.

40. And an under clarke usher of the same offices, who shalbe daily at the receite of bred in the paintre, & cause it to be counted; he shal receive & write the foilles of the tallies & names of them *that* sel the bred. And if the bred be baked of the kinges owne corne, he shal make a countre talle therof against the kinges baker, & he shal do likewise in the butterye. He shal make the liverces of bred, wine, & ale, *that* is to saye, of bred in the great paintre, of wine & beere in the great buttery. These liverces shalbe made every day before meales, except there be some reasonable cause to

¹ p. 21.

the *contrari*. He shal serve in the hal at both meales. And whether he be sicke or wel, he shal take for liverree, j. *darre* of bredde, one galon of ale, a messe de grosse from the kitchin. He shal have yerely one robe in clothe of the sute of clarkes, or xx^s in mony. His bed shalbe caried in the paintre cariages.

Paneters.

41. There shalbe a Serjant chefe *pancter*, who shal receive the bred in grosse bi the viewe of the clarke or underclarke, & aunswere for the expenses to the chief clarke everi day uppon ¹the briefs. He shal take for co^h, a galon of ale, three candels, for th'office, when need shalbe, iij candels; And be [he] holle or sicke, he shal have for livery, j. *darre* of bred, half a picher of wine, half a galon of ale, a messe de grosse from the kitchin, & one messe of rost, vij^d ob. a day wages, two robes yereli in cloth, or xlvj^s viij^d in mony.

Vnder him there shalbe a valet de *mestier*, who shal serve the halle at the one meale, & the said serjant at the other meale. There shalbe also two valletes porters of the same office; wherof the one shal carry the bredde at one meale, & the other at an other. Each of these three valletes shal have .j. robe yerely in cloth, or j. marc in mony, & for shoes iiij^s viij^d yerely; & wel or il, every day for livery, j. *darre* of bredde, one galon of ale, one messe de grosse from the kitchin. And for the vallet j. bed, & one bed for the ij porters, shalbe caried in the same office.

And there shalbe a serjant painter for the kinges mouth, who shal receive bred for the kinge & his chambre every day from the great paintre, & from no other place; And therof shal aunswere to the clarke of the briefs. He shal take for co^h, a galon of ale, iij candels, & for his office vj candels. And be he wel or il, he shal have for liverree, .j. *darre* of bred, half a galon of ale, half a galon of wine, a messe de grosse from the kitchin, a messe of rost, vij^d ob. a day for wages, two robes yereli in cloth, or xlvj^s viij^d in mony.

Vnder him also their shalbe in the same office a vallet de *mestier* for the chamber, who shal have yerely j. robe in cloth, or j. marek in

mony, for chauceur¹ al the yere *iiij^s viij^d*. And be he wel or il, he shal have for liveree .j. *darre* of bred, a galon of ale, a messe de grosse from the kitchin, & a bed caried for him & the vallet of the Cuppe-hous in paintrie cariages.

And a vallet de mestier, who shal purvey the bred for the houshold, & make talles to them *that* sel it, forwith uppon the buying of it, before the bredde be caried from him *that* selleth it; he shal cause it to come & be delivered into the pantry at the kinges coste & his owne peril. He shal eate in the halle amongst the other valletes de mestier, if he be not let bi some resonable cause *that* concerneth his office, & then there shalbe allowed him^e *ij^d* a day for wages in the painters rolle. And be he wel or il, he shal² have for liveree .j. *darre* of bred, a galon of ale, a messe de grosse from the kitchin, & robe & chauceur as before is said of other valletes de mestier. [p. 24, at foot.]

A Wafrer.

42. And a wafrer, who shal serve the kinge, the chamber, & the hal, of wafres, as appertaineth, & shal take for his office in the pantry rol, *vij^d* a day, suger in the wardrobe, egges in the ^{zukur} *esquillerye*,³ pulletrie, & fuel of the scullerye, as he shal need for the kinges service, & as he wil avowe before the steward & the tresorer, if he be resoned with for it. He shal take *vij^d* ob. a day wages, two robes yerely, or *xl^s* in mony. And be he wel or il, he shal take for liveree, .j. *darre* of bred, a galon of ale, a messe de grosse from the kitchin, & a messe of roste.

The bakehouse.

43. A serjant baker, who shal bake al manner of bred for the kinges housholdes expence, as wel round bred for al in *commone*, as pain de main⁴ for the kinges mouth, as he wil aunswere therfore at the account. When he shalbe charged bi the steward or thresorer to make purveiance of wheat, he must make the achates in due manner for the kinges best *profet* & the peoples lest grevance, making paiment, or giving a talle of the prise, to them *that* selle it, ymme-

¹ Fr. *Chaussure*: f. A hosing, or shoeing; also, hosen or shoes.—
 Cotgrave. ² p. 23. ³ scullery. ⁴ fine bread.

diately upon the buy[i]ng of the corne so purveyed, before it be mesured out of the sellers power. He shal deliver the foilles of the talles thus made to the sellers, over to the chief clarke of the panetrey, within viij dayes at the furthest after the achate made, bi which talles & foilles the sellers shal be paied in the warderobe, & the kinge fully served therof. This serjant shal take for fornage¹ of pain de main for the kinges mouth, iij^d a day in certain; for coeh, a galon of ale, iij kandels; for his office, two candels; for wages, vij^d ob. a day, two robes yerely in cloth, or xlvj^s viij^d in mony. And be he wel or il, he shal have for livere, j. darre of bred, half a picher of wine, half a galon of ale, a messe de grosse from the kitchin, & a messe of rost. And out of the court about his office, he shal take for his bouche, iiij^d ob. in the rol of the panetre.

And two valetes de mestier for the bakehouse; wherof the one shalbe ²attendant at the oven, & the other at the mille to grinde the wheate; & each of them shal take ij^d a day wages in the panetry rol, one robe yereli in cloth, or j. marc in mony; & for chauceur³ the whol yere iiij^s viij^d; & one bed for them ij, caried in the bakehouse cariages.

Naper.

44. A serjant naper, who shal serve for the kinges chamber & the hal from his office, & shal receive the naperie of the clarke of the spicery, & shal aunswere for it at the account as often as he shal be apposed; & shal cause the old clothes to be caried backe to the custody of the same clarke, when thei wil serve no longer, And from thence thei shalbe delivered to the almosner. This serjant shal take iiij^d ob. a day wages, two robes yerely in cloth, or xl^s in mony, for his office, & everi day two candels. And be he wel or il, he shal have for liveree .j. darre of bred, one galon of ale, one messe de grosse from the kitchin, a messe of rost; & his bed caried in the cariages of his office.

And a vallet of office⁴ under him in the same office, who shal take a robe yerly in cloth, or a mark in mony; iiij^s viij^d for chauceur

¹ baking. 'Wood for *furnage* of Bread, per annum . . . £40.'—*Household Ord. of Hen. VIII*, ed. 1790, p. 195. 'And that the *Furnour* doe season the Bread well.'—*Ib.* p. 232.

² p. 24.

³ shoes.

⁴ or 'de mestier.'

yerely. And whether he be wel or il, for liveree .j. darre of bred, .j. galon of ale, a messe de grosse from the kitchin.

Eawer.

45. An ewer for the chamber, who bi his office shal serve in the chamber, having iiij^d ob. a day wages, two robes yerely in cloth, or xl^s in mony. And he shal take for his office, ij candels when it shalbe needful; whether he be wel or sicke, he shal take for liveree .j. darre of bred, a galon of ale, a messe de grosse from the kitchen, & a messe of rost.

And a vallet de mestier of the Ewrie, who bi his office shal serve in the hal; taking yerely a robe in cloth, or a marke in mony, for chauceur, iiij^s viij^d by the yere. And be he wel or sicke, he shal take for liveree, .j. darre of bred, .j. galon of ale, a messe de grosse from the kitchin.

Launder.¹

46. And a lawendere for the kinges chambre, who shal wash al manner of linnen cloth for the kinges person, & al the office of the Eawrye, as wel them that are towards the hal as them that are towards the chamber, & the coveringes of the offices appertaining to the chamber, who shal take every day for liveree ij darres of bred, one galon of ale, ij messes de grosse from the kitchen, ij candels, busche² iiij^d ob. a day for wages, a robe yerely, or xxvj^s viij^d in mony; & for ashes & fuel², xxvj^s viij^d yerely³ at the wardrobe.

And a lawendere of the Naperie, who shal wash al manner of linnen cloth appertaining to the office of the Naperie,⁴ & the coveringes of the offices that pertaine to the hal; taking daily for liveree, ij darres of bred, two gallons of ale, ij messes from the kitchin, ij candles, iiij^d ob. a day wages, a robe yerly in cloth, or xxvj^s viij^d in mony; & for ashes & fuel, xxvj^s viij^d yerely at the warderobe.

The Buttillery.

47. And a chief Botiller, serjant purveour of wine, taking daily when he is in court for coeh .j. picher of wine, iij candels, j tortiz,

¹ See *Household Ord.* 1790, p. 85. ² fuel: see p. 36.

³ p. 25.

⁴ See *Household Ord.* p. 215.

two robes yerely in cloth, or xlvj^s viij^d in mony, & for his fee xx marks by the yere. His livery, be he wel or il, is j. *darre* of bred, half a picher of wine, half a galon of ale, one messe de grosse from the kitchin, a messe of rost. He shal do that *which* appertaineth to him, according as it is contained in the *statut* made concerning his office.

And a serjant botiller of the houshold, who shal receve & expende al the wine & ale *which* shalbe spent in the houshold; & shal serve the hal, & aunswere briefs daily to the clarke of the botery, for the *parcels* spent; & shal make the achates of cuppes of feust by the *clarkes* view, who shal allow *them* in the rol of the butery according as thei shalbe resonably spent, that is, on sunday for al the weeke past. He shal have in his custody the cuppes of silver, barrels bound with yron, tankers, & al manner of buttery vessel for service of the halle, & shal aunswere for it in the wardrobe; & shal take for livere, half a picher of wine, three candels, vij^d ob. a day wages; two robes yerely in cloth, or xlvj^s viij^d in mony. And shal take for his office of the bottiler, vj candles, & for the celler to drawe the wine, foure candels, when need shalbe. And be he wel or il, he shal take for liverree, j. *darre* of bred, half a picher of wine, a galon of ale, a messe de grosse from the kitchin, a messe of rost.

And a serjant botiler for the kinge, who shal receve al the wine & ale spent in the kinges chamber, of the botler of the houshold, who shal serve the chamber, & therof aunswere daily at the briefs¹ to the clarke of the botery, & shal have in ²his custody the potes & cuppes of silver for service of the chamber, & shal aunswere therefore in the wardrobe. He shal take for coeh, one galon of ale, iij candels, vij^d ob. wages, two robes yerely in cloth, or xlvj^s viij^d in mony; & shal take for his office, when need shalbe, viij candels. And be he wel or il, he shal take for his liverree .j. *darre* of bred, half a picher de la *quisine* of wine, j. galon of ale, a messe de grosse from the kitchen, & a messe of rost.

And a vallet de *mestier* of the cuppe-house, who shal serve the chamber according to the ordinance of his master serjant aforesaid;

¹ as abrievements in margin.

² p. 26.

& shal take j. robe yerely in cloth, or j. marek in mony, & for
 Chauceur shoes, iiiij^s viij^d by the yere. And be he wel or il he
 shal take for liverree .j. *darre* of bred, a galon of ale, a messe de grosse
 from the kitchin. There shalbe one bed for him & the valet of the
 panetre for the kinge, caried in the cariages of the panetre.

And a vallet de *mestier* wine-drawer, who shal drawe al the
 wine that shalbe spent in the house, & help to serve it into the hal
 when need shalbe, by the *commaundement* of his sovereignes. He
 shal take yereli, a robe in cloth, or a mark in mony. And for shoes,
 iiiij^s viij^d. And be he wel or il, he shal take for liverree, j. *darre* of
 bred, a galon of ale, a messe de grosse from the kitchin, & one bed
charottes for him & for the verser caried in the botlers carte.

And a vallet de *mestier* verser of the botery, who shal poure out
 wine & ale to be spent in the houshold for liverrees, & shal helpe to
 unloade the *cartes* which shal come with wine or beere for thexpense
 of the houshold, & shal take a robe yerely in cloth, or a mark in
 mony, & yerly for shoes iiiij^s viij^d. And whether he be wel or il,
 he shal take for liverree .j. *darre* of bred, a galon of beere, a messe
 de grosse from the kitchin.

And a vallet of *mestier* *purveiour* for ale, who shal make the
purveiance of ale. This *purveiour* shal make talles to every man of
 whom he shal have bought beere, ymmediately uppon the achate,
 before the ale go out of the house of him *that* selleth it. He shal
 cause it to be brought into the kinges buttery at the kinges *costes* ;
 & shal take ij^d a day wages in the Bottery rolle, one robe yereli in
 cloth, or a marek in mony ; & for shoes iiiij^s viij^d.

And two valletes de *mestier* of the picher-house, who shal serve
 the hal of wine & ale according to thadvise of their sovereignes.
hanaps. Thei shal wash the tankers, cups, & al manner of vessel
 which thei have custody of under the bottiler of the houshold. And
 shal take for the office, when need shalbe, two candels. Eache ¹of
 these shal have yerely one robe in cloth, or a mark in mony ; & for
 shoes iiiij^s viij^d : these ij shal have a bed betwene them caried in the
 cariage of the pitcher-house. And be thei wel or il, shal take .j. *darre*
 of bred, .j. galon of ale, one messe de grosse from the kitchin.

And two valetes de mestier porters for the bottery, who shal washe the yron-bound barrels as wel for wine as ale, & carry them for the service both of the chamber & the houshold; namely, out of the celer to the boutery & cup-house, if the seller be not lodged out of the Court; & if it be, & need require that the wine be caried from the celler bi carte or bot, for want of celler harber, so as it is not lodged so neare as it should, then those porters must carry the yron-bounde barrels from the botes & cartes, into the botery & cuppehouse aforesaid; & shal carry backe againe the same yron-bound barrels when thei are empty, whether soever the boteler of the houshold which hath them in custody shal give them charge to carry them for the kinges service. Thei shal eate in the hal, if thei be not out of the court in the kinges busines by commaundement of their sovereignes. And then each of them shal have ij^d a day for wages in the bottery rol, & one robe yerly in cloth, or a marke in mony; & for shoes iiiij^s viij^d. There shalbe one bed caried for these ij in the cariage of the botery. Thei shal have, whether thei be sick or in helth, .j. darre of bred, one galon of ale, & a messe de grosse from the kitchin.

Clarkes of the kitchin.¹

48. A chief clarke of the kitchin, who shal make the briefs of his office, & aunswere for the parcels delivered, & al other thinges pertaining to his office, every day at the count in the warderobe before the Steward & thresorer. He shalbe at the cutting out of the flesh & fish, & shal survey the achates & the prise of flesh & fish, & al other thinges pertaining to his office, with the aide of the controler, the knight usher of the hal, or knight marshal & assaier of the kinges table. He shal present the faultes that he seeth in his office to his sovereignes as often as he shal see it behoveful for the kinge; if he him self do carry & serve daily at the one meale, he shal eat at the other; & take daily for his coch, .j. picher of wine, 2 candels, .j. tortis, vij^d ob. a day for wages, til he be advanced bi the kinge. He

¹ William Thynne, the Chaucer Editor, was one, to Henry VIII. See his duties in *Household Ord.* p. 235-6, 231; and in my edition of Thynne's *Animaduersions*, E. E. Text Soc. 1875, pp. xxxi—xxxvi.

shal have yerely two robes in cloth, or xlvj^s viij^d in mony ; & be he wel or il, he shal take for liveree .j. darre of bred, half a picher of wine, half a galon of ale, j. messe de grosse from the kitchin, one messe of roste.

¹ And an under-clarke of the same office, who should every day make liverees of flesh, fish, & poultrie, & aunswere for the same liverees every daye to the chief clarke of the office for briefs, & shal write the parcels of the office ; & shal eate daily in the hal at the one meale, & serve at the other. He shal have yerely one robe in cloth of the clarkes sute, or xx^s in mony. And be he wel or il, he shal take for livery .j darre of bred, j. galon of ale, j. messe de grosse from the kitchin, & a messe of rost.

The Kitchin.

49. And two achators, who shal make the achates of flesh & fish for thexpence of the houshold, & shal bringe the price every day to the clarke of the kitchin, together with the thinges bought, so as the knight-usher of the hal, & the asseour of the kinges table, & the said clarke, may see forewith that there be ynough to be spent, & of good valew according to the kinges price. Thei shal make their achates in due manner for the kinges best profet, & the peoples lest grevance, making paiment or giving talles to every one of whom thei shal have bought goodes to the kinges use, immediatli upon the achate, before the goodes so purveyed go out of the sellors power. And thei shal deliver the foilles of the same tallies to the chief clarke of the kitchin, within viij daies after the achate at the furthest : by these tallies, they which sold any thinge shalbe paied in the wardrobe, & the kinge fulli served of the same thinges. Eache of these achators shal take for coñ, j. galon of ale, iij candels, vij^d ob. for wages, ij robes yerely in cloth, or xlvj^s viij^d in mony. And, be thei wel or il, thei shal take for liveree, j. darre of bred, half a picher of wine, half a galon of ale, j. messe de grosse from the kitchen, j. messe of rost, & being out of the court to make purveiance, iiij^d ob. for his bouch shalbe allowed in the kitchin rolle.

keus [Fr. queue, a cook] And two serjant Cokes for the kinges mouth, wherof

¹ p. 28.

when the one travalet^h with the kinge, riding before to make reddy
 pur son grande manger appa^reter his great meale, the other shal abide be-hinde for his
 dinner. Each of these shal take for his co^h, a galon of
 ale, iij. candels, vij^d ob. for wages, two robes yerely in cloth, or
 xlvj^s viij^d in mony. And wel or il, each of their liveries shalbe .j.
 darre of bred, half a picher of wine, a messe de grosse from the
 kitchin, & a messe of rost.

¹ And five valletes de mestier for the kinges kichin, under the said
 * querra serjantes, wherof one shalbe vs^her, & shal *fetche² by
 his masters commaundement, in the great larder, & the stable, al the
 flesh & fish which shalbe spent in the kinges chamber, & the bred,
 wine, & ale in the pantry & buttery, & spices for the kitchin in the
 Spicery, by the commaundement & appointment of his masters.

An other vallet shalbe Ewer, who shal receve the kitchin vessel
 by indenture of the Esquiller, & shal keepe it, as wel when thei
 † quira. travail as when thei sojorne, & shal † boile the gret flesh,
 & shal make reddi the first course, as wel of fish as of flesh.

An other valet shal be potager, who shal make the potages for
 the kinges chambre, & al the sewes which shalbe for his table.

Two other valletes shal make the rostes, & other courses for the
 said chambre, according to their masters appointmentes. Each of
 these valetes shal have yereli, one robe in cloth, or a marke in
 mony, & iiij^s viij^d for shoes. And, whether he be wel or il, he shal
 have for liveree, .j. darre of bred, .j. galon of bere, .j. messe de grosse
 from the kitchin.

These v. valletes shal have a boy to carry their bedes, & helpe
 them in the kitchen.

And two serjant Cookes for the meisne, who shal make reddi the
 vital for the meysne in the hal, as thei shalbe commaunded bi the
 Steward & thresorer, or their lieutenantes; one of them shal serve at
 one meale, & the other at the other meale. Each of them shal take
 for co^h, .j. galon of ale, iij candels, vij^d ob. a dai for wages, two robes
 yerely in cloth, or xlvj^s viij^d in mony. And for liveree in sicknes
 & helth .j. darre of bred, half a picher of wine, half a galon of ale, a
 messe de grosse from the kitchin, & a messe of roste.

¹ p. 29.

² fetch substituted for cutte out

And five *valletes* de mestier for the meisnes kitchin, under the *said* serjantes.

One of these shal make al manner potages which shalbe served into the hal.

An other valet shalbe boilour of the grosse, & shał make reddy the first course every day, which shalbe served into the hal, whether it be fish or flesh.

Three other *valletes* shal make the rostes & other courses for the hal, according to their masters appointment. Each of the .v. *valletes* shal take yerely a robe in cloth, or a marek in mony, & for shoes *iiij^s viij^d*.

¹In sicknes & helth, for liverce .j. *darre* of bred, .j. galon of beere, a messe de grosse from the kitchin.

two of them shal have a boy to carry their bed & help them in the kitchin.

And two *valletes* of office, which are called akers, which shal receive the vessel of the meisneies kitchen by indenture from the Esquiller: the[i] shal scoure it & keep it, both in travel & sojorne.

Each of these ij shal have yerely .j. robe or one mark in mony, & for shoes *iiij^s viij^d*; & in sicknes or helth for liverce, .j. *darre* of bred, a gallon of ale, & a messe en grosse from the kitchen.

Thei shal have a boy betwixt them.

Larder.

50. And a serjant lardiner, who shal receive the flesh & the fish which the achators shal send into the larder, or shal come for a present, & likewise the venison which shal be sent from the *kinges* * *venours le roy*. * *huntsmen* or whom-soever. He shal deliver the *said* flesh & fish for thexpence of the *kinges* house by *parcels*, & bi thadvise of the Controller, or the knight usher of the halle, the knight marshal of the hal, clarke of the kitchin, the asseour of the *kinges* table, & the master cokes. He shal keepe the viandes at the † as *abbreuements*. dresser, & render to the *said* clarke at the *briefs*† the certain *parcels* of the *said* flesh & fish expended in manner *aforsaid*; & if it come to *passé* that he be sent out of the court by the

¹ p. 30.

stewarde or tresurer to make ani manner of purveiance, he shal make it in such manner as before is shewed for achators. He shal take for coch̄ .j. galon of ale, iij candels, iiij^d ob. a day for wages; & shal have his bed caried in the cariage of *that* office, & take ij robes yerely in cloth, or xl^s in mony. He shal take for his office, when need requireth, three candels, & in sicknes or helth for liveree .j. *darre* of bred, half a picher of wine, half a galon of ale, a messe de grosse from the kitchen, & a messe of rost.

And a vallet de mestier, vsher of the larder, under the lardiner, who shal carri the kayes of the larder when the lardiner is out of the court, & then he shal receive, deliver, & aunswere for al thinges belonging to this office of the larder in the same manner as is aforesaid of the lardiner. And when the lardiner is in Court, he shal execute his office him-self. And the usher shal keepe the great kitchin for the meysne, *that* none come there but such as of right ought. He shal aunswere every day at the briefs, to the clarke of the kitchin, for the parcels of flesh & fish & al other thinges belonging to his office, *which* he shal have received in the kitchin aforesaid, *ville des achators*¹ as wel for the grosse out of the achators bille for the larder, as for the poultrie out of the herbergery. When the under clarke of the kitchin is let blood out of *the* court, he shal make the seigne querra kitchin livery, & shal fetch wine & ale from the pantery & botery, & spices from the spicery for the great kitchin, bi the commaundement & appointment of the master cookes. He shal have yereli a robe in cloth or a marke in mony, & iiij^s viij^d for shoes. His bed shalbe caried in the larder cariage; &, sicke or seigne ou malade wel, he shal take for livere, .j. *darre* of bred, a galon of ale, a messe de grosse from the kitchin.

Two valletes de mestier, porters for the lardere, who shal receive eschatour the flesh in the butchery of the achatour by certain account & nombre, & keepe it safely til it come into the court, & there thei shal deliver it bi the same count, & nombre to the lardiner or usher of the lardre, in like manner for the fish. Thei shal carri the flesh & the fish from the cartes to the usher of the kitchin unto the stable & larder, & backe againe from the larder to the kitchin, with

¹ p. 31.

the helpe of the Ewers, from the kitchin to the dresser. That *which* is lefte of the flesh & fish sent backe to the dresser after the meale ended, thei shal carri againe into the larder. And if one of the Achators of the kitchin be sent out of the court bi the steward or thresurer, to make purveiance for bestes, wine, or fish, he shal have one of these porters with him, by the advise of the clarke of the kitchen, to helpe him to bringe his purveiance made, safely into the court. This porter shal take every day as longe as he is out of the court about such busines, ij^d for wages in the kitchin rolle. And eache of these two porters shal take yerely a robe in cloth or a marke in mony, & iiij^s viij^d for shoes. Betwixt *them* both thei shal have a bed caried in the larder cariages.

Pulletrye.

51. And a serjant pulleter, who shal make the achates, & the *purveiance* for al manner thinges pertaining to his office. And shal every day take thadvise of the assecour of the kinges table of the clarke of the kitchin, & of the master cokes, what he shal bringe to court for thexpence of the chambre & the household. And, according to the same expence, he shal aunswere every day to the *said* clarke at the briefs, & therof shal make no liverce, but bi thadvise ¹of the foresaid clarke. He shal have xl^s a day in mony, & his bed caried in the cariage of his office, & wel or il, he shal have for liverce .j. darre of bred, half a picher of wine, half a galon of ale, a messe de grosse from the kitchin, & messe of rost.

And a vallet de mestier for the same office, *which* shal set a certaine price of the pullein ; & when he goeth into the cuntry to make purveiance for poultry, he shal have with him the traunters,² *which* must be in the same office or some of *them* ; these trauntors
traunters names shalbe entred in the wardrobe, to carry the purveiance *which* he shal have thus purveyed, & shal pay upon the
* sur l'ongle *naile for the *said* pullen at his peril, by reson of the certenty *which* is theron assesed, & shal aunswere before the steward & thresorer, if any complaint be made of outrages that he or the traunters have done in the cuntry, or of not paiment ; & he

¹ p. 32.

² Generally defin'd as pedlars, wandering dealers.

shal aunswere to his master serjant poulter for the mony *which* he hath reseved of him or of the warderobe. And when he is out of the court about the *said* busines, he shal have ij^d a day wages in the kitchin rolle, a robe yereli in cloth, or a marke in mony, & iiij^s viij^d in shoes. And, wel or il, for liverree, j. *darre* of bred, a galon of bere, & a messe de grosse from the kitchen.

Garbager.

52. And a serjant garbager¹ of the kitchin without wages, who herbergeour shal receive the pullaine bi certein number out of the pultry, & scald them, & al manner of foule, & deliver them bi parcels to the kitchins for thexpence of the kinges chambre & the household. And of these liverrees & parcels, he shal aunswere daily at the briefs to the clarke of the kitchen. He shal have yerely a robe or xx^s in mony. And shal take for his office, when need requireth, two candles. And, whether he be wel or il, he shal have for liverye .j. *darre* of bred, a galon of ale, a messe de grosse from the kitchen, a messe of rost; & for his fee, *which* is called petit ewe, betwixt Ester & whitsontide, a marcke bi the yere.

And a vallet of the same office without robes & wages, who shal serve in thoffice under his master, & shal take nothings of the kinge, but meate & drinke in the hal, & wel or il, for liverree, .j. *darre* of bred, one galon of ale, j messe de grosse from the kitchin.

²The Esquillerye.

53. And a serjant of the *Scullery, who shal achate & purvey

* esquiller	† fuel, coale, & al manner of vessel of brasse, of yron, &
† busch	‡ wood, <i>which</i> pertaine to the kitchein & potage, &
† feust	

divers other things belonging to his office; & he shal spende them in due order as is most fit, & shal aunswere for them every day at the briefs to the clarke of the kitchen. He shal have every day for coch, j. galon of ale, iij candels, & when it shal be needful, ij candles for his office, iiij^d ob. a day wages, two robes yerely in cloth, or xl^s. in mony. He shal have his bed caried in the cariages of his office, & wel or il, he shal take for liverree .j. *darre* of bredde, half a picher

¹ herbergeour *crossed out*.

² p. 33.

of wine, half a galon of ale, a messe de grosse from the kitchen, & j. messe of rost.

de mestier del
esquillery

And ij valletes of the mistery of the scullery, who shal travel, & do as much as the serjant shal commaunde them, according to reson, in thinges touching the offices. The one of them shal serve in the halle at one meale, & the other at an other. Each of them shal take a robe by the yere in cloth, or a marke in mony; foure shillinges eight pence for shoes. Thei shal have betwixt them a bed caried in the cariage of the office; & when he is let blood or sicke, for liveree j. darre of bred, j. gallon of ale, & a messe de grosse from the kitchen.

And a serjant of the scullery that shal receive the silver vessel into his custody, by number & by waight, that is, to saile chargeours & esqueles. He shal keep them, & aunswere in the wardrobe at the yeres ende, both the number & the waight. He shal take ij candles for his office, iiij^d ob. a day wages, ij robes yerely in cloth, or xlvj^s viij^d in mony. And, let blood or sicke, he shal take for liveree, j. darre of bred, j. galon of ale, a messe de grosse from the kitchen, & a messe of rost.

Sausery.

54. And a serjant sauser, who shal buy & purvey floure for al manner of sauces & other thinges which are needful for the office of the Sausery of the kinges houshold, & spende the same in due manner as appertaineth, & he shal bake as belongeth to his office, & aunswere at the brefes to the clarke of kitchen. He shal receive in the wardrobe his sausers of silver, & keepe them, & aunswere in the wardrobe at the yeres ende for the number & waight. He shal have for liveree a ¹gallon of ale, iij candles, & for his [office], when need requires, thre candles; vij^d. ob. a day wages, half a picher of wine, half a galon of bere, a messe de grosse from the kitchen, & j. messe of rost.

And two valetes de mestier of the Sausery, who shal do as much as the serjant commaundeth them, according to reson in matters pertaining to their office. The one of them shal serve at

one meale & the other at an-other. Each of them shal take yerly one robe in cloth, or a marke in mony, & iiij^s viij^d for shoes. Thei shal have betwene them one bed, caried in the carige of that office; and if any of them be let blood or sicke, he shal have for livery .j. darre of bredde, .j. galon [of] ale, a messe de grosse from the kitchen.

Porters.

55. And a serjant porter, which shal keepe the gate where the kinge lieth, so as none enter in but such as of right ought. And that he suffer no man to carri out of the court, bred, wine, ale, viandes, littre, fuel, nor any other thinge but that which thei ought. And that nothing be caried out but certein liverrees, & other thinges which of right ought to be caried out. If ani do to the contrari, that he cause to arrest them, & him also that carrieth the thinge; & that he shewe it in the next account before the steward & thresorer. And he shal not have under him in his office, but those onli which were the kinges robes. He shal not eat in the hal, but shal take his liverree, that is, everi day, j. darre of bred, a galon of ale, a messe de grosse from the kitchen, & a messe of rost. And being sicke, or let blooded, he shal have half a picher of wine, as other serjantes of the court. And shal take for coeh, a galon of ale, iij candles; & iij candles more for his office when need shal bee; vij^d ob. a day for wages; two robes bi the yere in cloth, or xlvj^s viij^d in mony. And the valetes of thoffice under him, which shal aide him day & night, & as much as thei can do, touching al thinges pertayning to that office. Thei shal not eate in the hal; but each of them shal take daily for livere, j. darre of bred, j. galon of ale, j. messe de grosse from the kitchen, & j. robe yerely in cloth, or a marke in mony, & iiij^s viij^d for shoes.

Marshalsy.

56. And a chief clarke of the marshalsy, who shal receive the tailles of the purveiances made bi the clarke, chief purveieur of the Avenery; & bi the ralletes, purveiors of the same office, together with the purveiances contained ¹in the same tallees. He shal make

¹ p. 35.

the breses of hay, oates, littere, & al other thinges which pertaine to the office of the marshalsy, according to the price, & the achates of the said purveiances; & shal also receve the tallees of harneys cartes; & shal account weekly with the purveiors of al offices for harneis, & shal receve the parcels of them, so as he may account weekly before the steward & thresorer of al manner of herneys. He shal cause to be allowed everi dai in the rol of his office the wages of the clarkes, serjantes at armes in office, esquiers of the houshold which have wages. He shal take for coch, j. picher of wine, ij candles, j tortiz; ij robes yereli in cloth, or xlvi^s viij^d in mony. And sicke or let blood, j. darre of bred, half a picher of wine, half a galon of ale, a messe de grosse from the kitchin, & a messe of rost. He shal have ij horses at livery for hay & oates, & one boy that shal have j^d ob. a day wages.

Purveyor of the
Avenery: And a clarke chief *purveior* of the avenerye, who shal make *purveiance* for hey & oates, litter, herneys, & other thinges necessari for the office of the marshalcy. He shal surveye the *purveiances* made by the vallet-*purveyours* under him, & shal receve of them the taillees of *purveiances* made bi them, & when he hath examined them, deliver them bi indenture to the chief clarke of the mareschalcy, together with the *purveiances* aforesaid; & shal cause to be entred in a rolle with him-self the names of them that sold the thinges, so as thei mai certefy the wardrobe if their be ani complaint that there is fraud in the tallees or *purveiances* of herneys, apperteyning to the office of marshalsy. The liverees that he shal make, when he is forth of the court about *purveiances*, the same being witnessed by the chief clarke of the marshalsy: he shal take iiiij^d ob. a day for his bouche¹ in the marshalsy rolle, & liveree for j. horse, & j^d. ob. a day for a boies wages; ij robes yerely in cloth, or xl^s. in mony. His bed shalbe caried in the cariage of his office; & beinge let blood or sicke, he shal take .j. darre of bred, half a picher of wine, half a galon of ale, j. messe de grosse from the kitchin, & .j. messe of rost.

Serjant Herber-
jour Warden of
the Kinges
Palfryes.

² And a serjant herberjour, warden of the kinges palfrays. He shal keepe, or cause to be kept, the palfrays,

¹ mouth, allowance.

² p. 36.

destrers, coursers, & other horses of the kinges stable. He shal ride in the company of the kinge, & carri the houche¹ of those horses the kinge shalbe mounted on; he shal bringe to the kinge the horse *that* he shal mount on, & shal receive him againe at his allighting. He shal make purveiance for al manner harneys appertaining to his office, bi the chief clark of the marshalsiés view, or on² the clarke chief purveour of the avenery. He shal account once every weeke with the clarke of the marshalcy for al thinges that he hath, so as the *said* chief clarke may account for it before the Steward & the thresorer everi weeke. When he is in Court, he shal eate in the hal; when he is from court about the kinges busines, & the same testified by the *said* clarke of the marshalsy, he shal have iiiij^d ob. a day wages in the rol of the marshalsy; & liveree for ij horses, wages for one boy, two robes yereli in cloth, or xlvj^s viij^d in mony. And for coeh, a galon of ale & iij candles. And being let blood or sicke, .j. *darre* of bred, half a picher of wine, half a galon of ale, a messe de grosse from *the* kitchin, & a messe of rost.

A Vallett
Herberjour

And a vallet herbergeour under him, who shal herberge the destrers, palfries, coursers, & other norses of the kinges stable; he shal clense & dresse the stables, & carry littere, hay, & oates to the stable for the same horses. He shal finde a cresset every night burning in the stable, & shal take ij^d a day for the cresset, & ij^d ob. a day for his wages; j. robe yerely in cloth, or a marke in mony; & iiiij^s viij^d for shoes, at ij seasons of the yeare.

Serjant
Herberjour of
Sommers & cart
horses. chivalx
charetters.

And a serjant herbergeour of sommers³ & cart-horses; he shal cause to be made, & amende cartes that are broken; he shal *purvey* & buy al manner of harneys behofeful for the somers, & cartes bi the view of the chief clarke of the marshalsy, or chief purveour of the avenery; & he shal deliver the tallees of al thinges that he shal *purvey*, buy, or cause to be made or amended, to the chief clarke of the marshalsy; & shal account with him every weeke once of al that he hath *purveyed* & bought, so *that* the clarke may account for it weekly before the

¹ cloths. Fr. '*Housse* . . a foot-cloth for a horse. *Houssé* . . Couered with a foot-cloth, as a horse; with a Blanket, as a Bed'.—Cotgrave

² of *crossed through and op (?) written over.*

³ sumpter-horses, who carried loads on their backs and sides.

steward & thresorer; ¹& the *said* herbergeour shal cause to be brought before the said chief clarke the cartes & harneis that can serve no longer, so as bi the testimony & survey of the *said* clarke, thei may be delivered where the Stewarde & thresorer shal appoint. He shal eate in the hal, when he is not abroad about his office; & then if the chief clarke witnes the same with him, he shal have for his bouch, iiij^d ob. a dai in the marshalcy roul, & liveree for one horse; & j^d. ob. a day wages for a boy; ij robes yerely in cloth, or xl^s in mony. His bed shalbe caried in the cariage of his office; & be he let blood or sicke, he shal take for liveree .j. darre of bred, .j. galon of ale, a messe de grosse from the kitchin, & a messe of rost.

A Vallett
Herbergeour

Vnder him their shalbe a vallet herbergeour, who shal herberge the said horses, sommers, & chariters; & shal oversee that these horses be convenientli served; & shal helpe to do all thinges of this office, as shalbe commaunded or ordained by the sergeant. His daies wages shalbe ij^d; he shal have yereli one robe in cloth, or a marc in mony; & iiij^s viij^d for shoes twice a yere.

A Serjant
Marsshall

And a serjant marshal, who shal take heed that the horses be wel kept, & shal, when need requireth, make marshes & medicines; receving mony for thinges medicinal pertaining to his office in the wardrobe. He shal render an account to the chief clarke of the marshalsy how he hath laied out the mony. He shal take half the fee of the ferrurie, so as he be at half the coste of the ferrurye. He shal eate in the hal; And when he can not eate there bi reson of imploimentes of his office, the same being testefied bi the chief clarke of the marshalsy, he shal have iiij^d ob. for his bouche in the marshalcy rolle, & liveree of hay & oates everi day for ij horses; & j^d. ob. a day wages for a boy; two robes yereli in cloth, or xlvj^s viij^d in mony. And being let bloode or sicke, .j. darre of bred, .j. galon of ale, .j. messe de grosse from the kitchin, & .j. messe of rost.

Two Vallets
Purveyor for the
Avenery

And ij valletes purveiors for the Avenery, who shal make the purveiances of hey, oates, littere, & other thinges necessary for the horses expence, to the kinges best profet, &

lest grevance of the people, & that bi thadvise of their sovereignes. They ¹shal make tallies to them *that* selle them any thinge, before thei take them out of their possession; the foilles of those tallies thei shal deliver to the chief purveour of the avenery, who shal examin them, & survey the thinges bought; after *that*, those foilles, & al the vitailles & purveiances shalbe delivered to the chief clarke of the marshalsy, who shal cause them to be spent, & allowed in the rolle of his office; & shal make the liveree of hay for horses herberged out of the court, & deliver the *parcelles* of the liverees day by day to the clarke of the marshalsy uppon the briefs; & shal take ij^d a day wages, one robe yereli in cloth, or a marke in mony, & iiij^s viij^d in shoes.

A Vallet Porter
for the Garner.

And a vallet porter for the garner, who shal carry the ful sakes to the garner when the purveiances come in; he shal mesure the oates, both when thei come in & issue forth; he shal keepe the sakes & mesures at his peril, & aunswere it to the chief clarke of the marshalsy. He shal cast the hay by *armefulles * bracees. for the horses livere *that* are in the houshold. He shal go before to receive houserome by delivere of the marshal herbergeour; & shal cause to be herberged, the garner chief of the marshalsy, the chief purveour, & others of the office. He shal have ij^d a day wages, one robe yereli in cloth, or a marke in mony, & iiij^s viij^d for shoes twice a yere. The mesures of thoffices of avenery shalbe according to the standard of england, so as the oates shalbe received in, & delivered out by the same garner mesure.

A Vallet Carnauer.
recrers

And a vallet carnauer that hath knowlege in marshausy & ferrurie, who shal loke to the sicke horses taken from the sommers & charetes,² til thei be healed & able to travel, as the chief clarke of the marshalsy, the serjant marshal, & ferror shal appoint. He shal have ij^d a day wages, one robe yereli in cloth, or x^s in mony; & iiij^s viij^d for shoes at two sesons of the yere.

There shalbe xx charettes for the offices, eache having five horses at liveree of hay, oates, & litte; the forenamed ferrors shall shoe them.

¹ p. 38.

² *Charette*: f. A Chariot; a Wagon.—Cotgrave.

There shalbe also xx charetters, & each of *them* shal have a fore-rider; *which* charetters & fore-riders shal drive the charettes, & keepe the horses, & receve livery of hay, oates, & littere from the office of the avenery, as the chief clarke of the marshals shal appoint. They shal receve charettes, & al manner harneis needful for their ¹offices, of the serjeant herbergeour for somers & charettes.

Each of these charetters shal take ij^d a day for his wages, one robe bi the yere in cloth, or xx^s in mony; & for his fore-rider, j^d. ob. a day for wages, j. robe yereli in cloth, or half a marke in mony; & for shoes for the fore-rider iiiij^s viij^d at two sesons of the yere.

²⁴ Somers. And xxiiij somers², wherof xvj for the kinges chambre, & xvij for divers offices of the houshold; for keeping of *which* shalbe appointed xxiiij someters, who shal keepe these somers, & receve liveree of hay, oates, & littere from the office of the avenery; & thei shalbe shod bi the fore-named ferroures. And thei shal receve of the serjant herbergeour, saddles, bridles, halters, & other herneisses needful for the somers. Each of *them* shal have ij^d a day wages, one robe yereli in cloth, or tenne shillings in mony; & iiiij^s viij^d for shoes at two sesons of the yere.

Also in the kinges stable there shalbe as many valletes as horses. These valletes shal keepe the destrers, palfreyes, coursers, & other the kinges horses bi the appointment of the chief herbergeour & gardein of the palfreis; each of *them* shal have ij^d a day wages, one robe yereli in cloth, or x^s in mony; & iiiij^s viij^d for shoes at two seasons of the yeare.

A Hacknyman. In the same stable shalbe an hackney man, who shal keepe * the hakene of the house, & † shal fetch every † querra day at the garner the liveree of oates for the horses of the † houses des chivalx stable, & shal carry the † houses³ of the horses that travel in the kinges compani for the same hakeney. He shal have j^d ob. a day wages, one robe yereli in cloth, or half a mark in mony; & iiiij^s viij^d for shoes.

Serjant Marshall. And a serjant, who shalbe a sufficient mareschal gardein § hors de haraz le Roy of the yonge horses drawne § out of the kinges races⁴, &

¹ p. 39.

² Fr. *Sommier*: m. A Sumpter-horse.—Cotgrave.

³ Cloths or trappings: see p. 40, note 1.

⁴ Fr. *race*, brood.

other horses also *that* shalbe delivered him to keepe sometimes by the kinges commaundement. He shal keepe these yonge horses wel & covenabli til thei be able to travel, & the kinge hath declared his pleasure. This garden shal purvey & buy hay, oates, littere, & other thinges necessary for these horses, so as these¹ purveiances² & buyinges be made for the kinges best profet & the peoples lest grevance. He shal ether make present paiement, or give tallees to them that sel him any thinge so purveyed or bought, & shal have the sherif of the shere where he sojorneth, a wisse of his doinges; & the sherif shal testefy bi his *lettres*, & certefy to the kinges warderobe the purveiances, bargaines, & paiementes made bi the same serjant, so as their mai be no fraude, malice, nor other grevance done to the people of the cuntry bi the serjant gardein nor ani other that is in the sojorne. He shal have liverie of hay & oates for ij horses; his boy shal have j^d. ob. a day wages, & robes yereli in cloth, or xl^s in mony. And he shal have as many valletes as horses, & noe more. Each of these valletes shal have ij^d a day wages, one robe yereli in cloth, or x^s in mony, & iiij^s viij^d for shoes at two seasons of the yeare. Likewise he shal have a vallet ferrouer under him to shue the horses, who shal have ij^d a day wages, one robe yereli in cloth, or x^s in mony; & for shoes iiij^s viij^d.

Venours.

Hunsmen.

57. And Thomas de Borhunt, who holdeth of the kinge in chief one plowe lande in Little weldon, in the county of Northampton, of the heritage of Margarete, the daughter & heir of John Lovel, now wife to the *said* Thomas, bi certaine service, to be the kinges hunzman for deere.

chiens deymerez

vj. liverers
des chiens le Roy.

* barils

† ventrer

He ought to have in his custody xxiiij buckhoundes & vj of the kinges graihoundes. He shal take for each doges puture .j^d. ob. a day, & for eache of the ij vallet *barils j^d. ob. a day wages; & .j. robe yereli in cloth, or a marke in mony, & shoes; j. †to vent³ the horne shal have ij^d a day wages, one robe yereli in cloth, or a marke in mony;

¹ MS. these these² p. 40.³ blowe *crossed through*.

& iiij^s viij^d for shoes. These dogges the same Thomas must keepe at his owne costes xl. daies in lent: xv. buckhoundes & one *berner*. *berner*. The residew of the ¹doges & the other *berner* shalbe at the kinges costes, aswel in this season as al the rest shalbe the residew of the yere.

The *said* Thomas at court shal have vij^d ob. a day wages; & being from court in the kinges affaires xij^d for wages & expenses; two robes yereli in cloth, or xl^s in mony. And whether he be let bloode or sicke, he shal have for liverree, j. *darre* of bred, j. galon of ale, one messe de grosse from the kitchin, & a messe of rost.

And an otterhunt, who shal have in his custody twelve dogges running at the ottre, & two of the kinges grayhoundes, & two boyes to keepe the dogges. He shal have for his owne wages ij^d a day, if he have not his diet in the hal amongst the *valletes de mestier*; & for each of the boyes j^d ob. a day; & for him-self one robe yereli in cloth, or a mark in mony; & iiij^s viij^d for shoes.

ferretter.

A ferretter.

58. And a ferretter, who shal have ij ferretes & a boy to help him to take conies when he shalbe so charged bi the steward or thresorer. He shal take for his owne wages ij^d a day; for his boy j^d ob.; & for the puture of the ferretes j^d; & one robe yerely in cloth, or a marke in mony; & iiij^s viij^d by the yere for shoes.

perdrigeour

A partringer.

59. And a partringer, who shal have in his custody t[w]o doges cochours, ij faucons for partriges; & he shal have for each doges puture ob., for ij faucons ob., for his owne wages ij^d, & for j. boy .j^d. ob. a daye; one robe yereli in cloth, or a marke in mony; & iiij^s viij^d in shoes.

A birde-taker or Oyselour.

60. And an oyselour, who shal have ij^d a day wages if he have not his diet in the hal amongst the *valletes de mestier*, one robe yereli in cloth, or a mark in mony; & for shoes iiij^s viij^d.

A fisher.

61. And a fisher, who shal have ij^d a day wages if he have ¹not his diet in the halle amongst^t the valletes of mestier, & one robe yereli in cloth, or a marke in mony; & for shoes iiij^s viij^d.

Trompours, Trompetours.

62. There shalbe ij trompeters & two other minstrels, & sometime more & sometime lesse, who shal play before the kinge when [it shal] please him. Thei shal eate in the chambre or in the hal as thei shalbe commaunded; thei shal have wages & robes each according to his estate at the discretion of the steward & thresorer.

Messengers.

63. And xij messengers, who shal eate in the hal, & shal never goe out of the houshold except the[i] be sent of messages & have leave of the steward or thresorer. And if thei doe, thei shalbe put out of the houshold. And when thei shalbe sent of messages, their jornees shalbe certainli set downe; & thei shal have iiij^d a day whilst thei are absent; & if thei returne not at the day assigned, or can not excuse them-selves for some resonable cause, thei shal have the fore-said punishment; & each of them shal have a robe of a sute by them-selves, or a marke in mony; & iiij^s viij^d for shoes.

Archers.

64. And xxiiij archers on foote for garde of the kinges body, who shal goe before the kinge as he travalet thorough the cuntry. Each of these shal have iiij^d a day wages, one robe yereli of a sute by them-selves, or x^s in mony; & iiij^s viij^d bi the yere for shoes.

² A chappeler.

65. And a chappeler, who shal make the chapeux for the chapeux³ & esquiers of the houshold, & shal eate in the hal bi him-self of his
le relief de la viande proper table-cloth; & shal carry the relikes of the vitails

¹ p. 42. ² p. 43. (? *Chappelier*: m. A maker of Hats; or, of Garlands.—Cotgrave.) ³ ? repeated, for 'knightes.'

wherwith he shalbe served, without any other thinge takinge of the kinge.

66. Also it is ordained & expresly commaunded that the kinges chief boteler from hence forward shal make purveiances & buying of wines for the sustenance of his houshold so wel & so conveniently that he & the good men which are nere him may be so honorabli served from that office as appertaineth for maintenance of the honour of the lord of it, so as nether ani of the houshold nor others may have cause to slaunder the said house, to the lordes dishonour, thorough the Botelers fault; so as the purveiances & buyinges be made to the lest damage & disturbance of the merchantes as the butler can or may devise, so alwaies as our lord the kinge have his auncient prises & al other advantages which of right he ought to have bi reson of his seigniory. And after the boteler shal thus have bought his wines, & agreed with the merchantes, let him presently cause the prisage wines & the wines he hath bought, presentli to be caried & lodged where the Steward¹ & thresorer of the houshold shal appoint, & there let him deliver these wines by good indenture to the serjant boteler of the escantelons houshold, in the houshold, with the scantelinges of the tonnes, under the merchantes seales that sold them, mentioning both the peeces of the wines, the prise, & the merchantes of whom thei shalbe bought, to-gether with al other charges; even those which he shal have laid out about the cariages of them, or in other resonable manner,² from the first buying, til the time thei be thus delivered into the houshold. And let thindenture be of three partes, so as one may remaine with the Boteler purveour, an other with the serjant boteler in the houshold, & the other with the clarke of the botillery; bi which indenture the said clarke shal account with the chief Boteler purveour, both for the price & the charges, & with the Botiler of the houshold how the wines are spent. After, when the wines are couched & setled, the controler knight vsher, or knight marshal of the halle, & clarke of the botery, shal view & tast them, whether thei be good & such as thei ought to be according to the prices in thindentures. And if thei be allowed for good, then shal

¹ MS. Steward

² p. 44.

al the forrein charges comprised in thindenture be proportioned bi equal parcels after the number of tunnes. And those charges shalbe allowed in the Buttery rolle according to the quantiti of wine delivered out & spent every day. But if it be not thought the wines are aunswerable to the price thei are bought at, the fault shal immediateli be shewed to the Stewarde & tresurer, who shal cause such amendement of it as the kinge be no loser, nor the house il served. And if it happen the same wines, or any parte of them, be not spent before the kinge departe from the place where thei are laid in, then let them be rebailed¹, redelivered to the chief *purveour* to carry or keep them as the Steward & Thresorer shal give commaundement. And the charges he shalbe at a-new about those wines so removed, shalbe allowed him assone as thei are received againe to the kinges use.

Also the other *purveour* shalbe charged that he cause to be brought to the houshold for the kinges owne mouth, as sone as he can, al the wines which he shal buy for the kinge of the auncient prises; which if he can not convenientli do to the kinges profet, bi reson of the farre distance of place, then let him sel them, so as he aunswere the kinge upon his account the highest price of the wines purveyed & bought.

²Ordinances.

2. Order for
Lodging of the
kinges servantes
* mesnee de son
hostiel

67. Also it is ordained by our lord the kinge & his counsel, for the ease of his people, that the *meney of his houshold that can not be lodged ether in the kinges house or the towne it self where the kinge lodgeth, shal be lodged by the harbergers within the vierge, everi one according to his estate. That is to say, a knight with iiij horses, a clarke, a serjant, & an *esquier*, everi one according to the wages he shal have of the kinge; that is, at iiij^d ob. one horse, viij^d ob. two horses, xij^d three horses, xv^d iiij horses, aswel in sojorne & stay, as time of travel; so as the cuntry about the kinge may not wax deere by †surcharge without reson.

The officers of houshold shalbe lodged as neere the court as mai

¹ crossed through.

² p. 45.

be, to thende thei mai be reddi to do their duties as often as need shal require; & Al others of the said meignee as neer as the cuntry wil wel permit. Lodging shal so be delivered to everi man of the household, in such sort as he may have competent house roome at ease for him-self, his meignee, & his goodes. And it is

* defendu *forbidden that any of the kinges meignee, after he is lodged, take within that house any vittailles for him-self or his horses † sūr de l'ostiel against the wil of the † master of the house, as longe as he may have them else-where for his mony. And when that wil not be, let him take them in the house, in the most curteous & plesinge manner that may be, so as he pay mony to the valewe of the darres. darres, & that everi one of the meignee may, without others impechement, by vittailles needful for him wheresoever thei

‡ auxi bien en shalbe, ‡ as wel within the precinct assigned to an other autrui livere come la son as his owne. And it is likewise forbidden, that any propre other of the kinges household, or other the good people within their liveree, to give or sel their goodes where thei plesse, or to carry them to the market to make therof their profet at their wil & plesure, so as everi man mai be free to do & dispose of his owne goodes as pleseth him; for the kinges purpose is not to abandon his § mesne subjectes goodes to the violence & distresse of his § meyne || herbergage bi colour of their ||lodginges.

Order that the Herbirgers bee not refused convenient Lodgings. ¶ sa seigniory
 1 And to thende our sovereigne lord the kinge may be served wheresoever he commeth, as appertaineth to his ¶ highnes, it is commaunded & ordained that no man be so hardy as to disturbe his ministres, to make their purveiance & achates for their mony where thei may do it best for his honour & profit; & that, as wel for al the liverees appointed for others, as else-where, without any disturbance. And the kinge doth also commaunde that the officers performe it in as convenient sort as best behoveth for preservation of his honour.

68. Also it is ordained that the steward & Thresorer shal have Order that Accounts shall bee discharged within 3 dayes. daily in the warderobe thaccountes of the householdes in tyme of sojorne; & if thei passe the thirde day of account, thei shal discharge the charges of the household that day.

¹ p. 46.

If the king travel, so as no account can be taken, at every next sojorne thaccount of the arrerages shalbe harde ; & if it be not so done, thei shal acquite the one half of a daies charge.

69. Also it is ordained that al the serjantes of office which are Officers to account daily, or else forfeit their wages. *accountable, whether thei be towards the chambre or the halle, shal come daily to account in the warderobe * de la contee of the house, to aunswere for the parcels of their officers, unles thei can excuse them-selves for some good & resonable cause, † mestres so as the liveres of bred & wine, & other † necessities which belonge to the account, may daily, when occasion fitteth, be harde & reformed, as the discretion of the steward & thresorer shal thinke resonable.

70. And let al officers do that appertaineth to their places ; if thei do not, at the first the steward & thresorer shal at the first fully & in faire manner warne them of it. If after thei offende, & have wages, thei shal lose their wages for a month ; & for the thirde offence, after ¹gentle admonition given, thei shal forfait their wages.

The seconde offence is losse of allowance for shues ; the third², losse of his robe ; & the forth, forfaiteth the freedome of accesse to the kinges houshold, without hope of attayning it againe.

‡ derechef 71. ‡ Furthermore it is ordained that no knight § l'ostiel ne soit esconduit § shalbe barred the houshold ; yet none of them shalbe A Knight not to remaine in Court above 3 dayes without Licence he make his abode there above three daies without the kinges special commaundement.

72. It is also ordained that the ordinances for the houshold which were made at wodestoke, be observed in such manner as thei are ordained ; nameli, that the marshals or ushers of the hal shal not suffer that any, though he be of the kinges meigne, eate not in the halle, nor take any thinge out of the houshold, if bi the devised orders he be not allowed so to doe, but those only which have robes of the kinge ; & none of them shal take wages for his diet in his liverec, alwaies excepted those times when strangers be received & honored as thei ought to be. And if it happen that any of the houshold that ought not to eate in the halle, do eate there without

¹ p. 47.

² MS. seconde

their leave *which* have power to give leave, both he & the usher that suffreth him to come in shal incurre the paine before ordained.

73. And it is ordained that none shal remaine in any of the *esquil. offices of the panetry, Butery, kitchen, *scullery, sauserie, Napery, herbergerie, larder, pultry, marshalsy, avenerie, Chaundlery, nor any other office of the houshold, but such as have a certaine office, & take the kinges or Queenes robes. If ani man be otherwise, he shalbe taken & put in prison til he be ¹delivered bi the Steward & thresorer in the ful account. And he that hath the custody of the office, & hath suffered him to be there, shalbe punished in like sorte. And if the vsher be guilty of it also, he shal endure like punishment.

garsons 74. It is likewise ordained that boyes of offices that have robes allowed them, & diet in the hal, as those of the panetri, † barrons Galle butteri, kitchen, & other offices of the houshold, & † welsh † barrons Galle pour garcons Galle, ut opinor boies, archiers, messagers, or others, so as none may embesil the kinges almes. And if ani do, the chief Almner shal shew it at the account before the steward & thresorer as is aforesaid, who shal theruppon declare their plesure, upon the foresaid paine.

75. It is also ordained that no valet de mestier shal from henceforth have horses in Court, except he have certaine wages allowed him of the kinge for him & his horse. If ani other be founde to have a horse, the horse shalbe taken from him & delivered to the Almner; & the Almner shal give him away, for godes sake. And this shalbe observed as many times as he is founde to have any horse.

76. It is also ordeined that no serjant vallet, nor other of the house, shal eat in other place then the hal, except he be let bloode bi licence of the Stewarde & thresorer, or others supplying their places, or be sicke, for *which* cause he should have his livery out of the housholde.

77. It is likewise commaunded that no stranger eate in any of the offices, nor be received into them bi them of the office, nor others of the houshold. If any of the houshold offend herein, he shal be punished as before. And the pantler, ²butler, coke, & others that serve them, shal have the punishment before at the first ordained.

78. It is also ordained that no vallet de mestier have ani page

¹ p. 48.

² p. 49.

but thei of the kitchen, who shalbe two & two to a page. If ani man do otherwise, the doer, & he that suffereth it, having charge of him, shalbe punished as aforesaid.

79. It is ordained that no vallet de mestier in the kitchen, or any other office in the houshold, give away any thinge bi way of curtesye without their leave to whom it appertaineth. If he doth it he shalbe punished, & he also that hath the custody of him.

80. It is ordained that no esquier, nor other, medle with the cariage of bred, wine, or any vittailles after thei are set on the table, those onli excepted to whom that service pertaines bi reson of their offices. And if any of the houshold offende, he shal be punished as before.

81. No knight of the houshold shal take any liveree, if [he] be of the houshold only, & not in any office.

82. It is ordained that the kinge & Queenes steward shal examine, once a weeke at the least, how many of the kinge & Queenes doges shal have liveree, & give commaundement to the clarke of the panetri to aunswere at thaccount.

83. It is also ordained that to such Esquiers as have wages, & are sicke,¹ & the valletes de mestier when thei are sicke, have liveree according to their estate bi thappointment of the steward & thresorer.

84. It is also ordained that the great lordes, which have their ^{* de liveree deins le clos ou le gist.} chamber *appointed them in the same court wherin the kinge lyeth, shal have wine, candles, & liveree for their chamberlaine, according to the steward & thresorers appointment.

85. The Queenes steward & thresorer shalbe alwaies at the account, to cause the messes to be examined, & the gentes de mestier, † de vers madame † which are belonging to her highnes & her meignee, & to cause the outrages to be amended. And al the serjantes shalbe at the account to aunswere their owne doynges.

86. It is also ordained that the kinge shalbe served with iiij courses & no more, for him & the great lordes that eate at his table, & the Queene also. And that in al other places of his houshold, al shalbe served with three courses, save the boies, who shal have two.

87. It is ordained that al palfreours & somters of the kinges house, whatsoever thei be, shal have ij^d a day. Those of the kinges

¹ p. 50.

houshold that are weake & unable to travel, as *valletes de mestier*, *charetters*, *somters*, *messagers*, & al others, shalbe sent to divers hospitals & abbies that hold of the kinge, & are not formerly charged, & their thei shal have livelihood according to their estates.

88. No *liveree*, boiled or rawe, shalbe made in no parte ¹of the houshold ether of the kinge or Queene, but to the great pantery & *buttery*, *kitchin*, *larder*, & the great houshold for the *meignee*.

*de le grand
hostiel de vers le
meignee.*

These ought to be the *liverees* of the houshold.

89. And it is ordained that al the *presentes* that from henceforth shalbe sent to our lord the kinge, shalbe delivered, without delay or advisement, to the serjant of the offices of his houshold, according to the nature of the *presentes*, so as thei which shal have fees may have them from their warde, after thei have dereigned before the steward, thresorer, & the *serjantes* of thaccount, what fee thei shal have for such a present. And if any man do ought against this ordenance, & take such fee without having it deraigned as

aforesaid, if it be not out of the warde of the *serjantes* of thoffices of the houshold, whosoever he be that so doeth, shal immediateli acquit

* *demande* the valew of the whol *present, which shalbe sent to the kinge. And the thresorer of the warderobe, as sone as he shal knowe that such thinges are taken otherwise then out of the *serjantes* of the offices warde, be he knight, elarke, serjant, or vallet, that hath fees, wages, or robes of the kinge, so much in valew as the kinges whol present shal amount unto, shal without further judgment cause to be held guilty & set it upon him that hath taken it.

And that valew shalbe recovered, ether from his fees, wages, or robes, as the valew may sonest be levied.

90. It is ordained & commaunded by our Lord the kinge, that their shalbe a †foregoer in the kinges houshold, but in manner hereafter written. And thei shalbe fore-goers for whom men wil aunswere, & their names shalbe delivered to the marshals. If their be any other taken, he shal forewith be taken & imprisoned, & not be delivered without the kinges special commaundment; & no man shalbe avant-alour who hath for-jured the Court.

*oustriment
atteindre*

† *avant-alour*

¹ p. 51.

² p. 52.

for the wardrobe & al the clarkes therof	j. herberger named.
for <i>the</i> privy seale & al the clarkes	j. herberger named.
for them <i>which</i> carve ¹ before <i>the</i> kinge	j. herberger named.
for the Butlers for the kinges mouth, & him <i>which</i> serveth the cuppe	} j. herberger named.
for the assayours for the kinges mouth	j. herberger named.
for the 2 master paneters, & the valletes of <i>that</i> mistery under them	} j. herberger named.
for the master Cokes for the kinges mouth, & valletes under them	} j. herberger named.
for the Chaplins & the clarkes of <i>the</i> chappel	j. herberger named.
for knightes having offices each his harbegeour	j. herberger named.
for the contreroller	j. herberger named.
for <i>the</i> coffrer	j. herberger named.
for al <i>the</i> knightes <i>which</i> ly together	j. herberger named.
for the infantes in warde	j. herberger named.
for the vshers of the chamber	j. herberger named.
for the fruterer, naperer, Ewer, & their valletes of mistery	} j. herberger named.
for the squiers attendantes on <i>the</i> kinge	j. herberger named.
for al other esquiers attendantes in the hal	j. herberger named.
for the chief butler & his companion & their valletes	} j. herberger named.
for the clarke of the panetre, botery, & those under them	} j. herberger named.
for <i>the</i> clarke of the kitchen, & achatours	j. herberger named.
for ij master Cokes for the meignee, the lardiner & the valletes	} j. herberger named.
for the chaundelour & <i>the</i> valletes of <i>that</i> mistery	} j. herberger named.
for the master Esquiller & one companion	j. herberger named.
² for the Saucerye & al those of <i>that</i> office	j. herberger named.
for ij phisitiens	j. herberger named.
for <i>the</i> kinges surgeon	j. herberger named.
for al the valletes of <i>the</i> chambre	j. herberger named.

¹ trenchent² p. 53.

for the porter & the valletes	j. herberger named.
for the 2. gaytes & waffers	j. herberger named.
for the palfers & coursers	j. herberger named.
for Adam de Bowyer, John Hauberjour, Robert Gynour, Hugo Bungey	} j. herberger named.
for the baker & valletes	j. herberger named.
for the avener & al under him	j. herberger named.
for the ausmoner & al under him	j. herberger named.
for the Pulleter, the herberger, & their valletes	j. herberger named.
for the kinges confessor	j. herberger named.
for al the minstrelx	j. herberger named.
for the marshals of the hal, the vshers, & their servantes	} j. herberger named.
for the fauconers	j. herberger named.
for the huntsmen, ventrers, & the doges that runne at hares	} j. herberger named.
for the Somters & charetters	j. herberger named.
for the Steward & Crowners clarke	j. herberger named.
91. Bribours { William Plane } dame Gunnore for the chambre. } a nuite { Maure } christien Scot for the wardrobe. } The wife of Simon the Euwar, for the naperye. } Annote the walsh, for the whol cominalty of the houshold. }	

92. It is to be remembred that our lord the kinge hath commaunded his marshals, that thei serche from weeke to weeke if there be any stranger that foloweth ¹ the court whom no man avoweth, he shal for[th]with be taken & punished, as is formerli ordained.

93. And our lord the kinge willeth that the place of the marshalcy of his houshold be charged with no other ministres then it ought of right, that is, with a Coroner & his clarke for the kinge, & one knight & one clarke, one serjant, one vallet de mestier to kepe the prisonne for the Erle marshal. And if the same ministers can not execute al the kinges commaundementes & executions of the bills of the same place, our lord the kinge wil[leth] that the sherifs & bailifs sworne for the cuntry which the kinge cometh thorough, shalbe charged to aide the marshals to sarve the billes of the place,

¹ p. 54.

& do the kinges commaundement, as thei shalbe charged, whersoever the kinge shal comme.

94. And for-as-much as hideous *complaintes* & cryes come to the court day bi day, of great affraies & mischiefs done in the cuntry where the kinge goeth, by people that followe the court, without the avowry of any man, & bi women of folish life; as for homicides, roberies, breking of houses, & wrongeful actes done by them. St. nicholas in the yeare of the raigne of our lord kinge Edwarde the xijth, in the city of yorke, for the common profet of the cuntri, & to avoid the court of al manner of such people. And the kinge commaundeth that al sutors avoide the court continually, but such as are in the Coroners rol in the marshalsy, & there entred & received bi good mainprise. ¹And if other be founde² within the court or els-where within the vierge, folowing the Court after the kinge is removed out of the said cittie, that he be taken & imprisoned, & not delivered without the stewarde. And that no man follow the court that hath not a lord or master to avowe him. And that none of the kinges meignee, of what condition soever he be, knight or clarke, serjant, esquier, charetter or sompter boy, page or sutor, keepe his wife at the court, nor els-where as a folower of the court; but only such women to be there, which are in chief with the kinge, or such as are intituled in the marshalsy in the Coroners roul, there to be imploied in

* crye fait des
ordinances.

certaine offices. If any other be founde there after *these ordinances proclaimed, such as keepe them there shal avoid the kinges houshold, except the kinge ple[se] to pardon them. And that † de fole vie none of the court leade with him any woman of †dishonest life: if ani such woman be founde, he that she avoweth her self by, shalbe taken & imprisoned, & not delivered but bi the Stewarde.

It is likewise [to be remembered, that³] a certaine paine is ordained for those men which, after proclamation made, be their found, contrari to these ordinances; first, thei shal forjure the houshold; if after that thei be taken, thei shalbe layd up in yrons, & there continew xl. dayes with bred & water; after which their bodies shalbe at the kinges plesure.

¹ p. 55. ² MS. finde. ³ ordained on the for *crossed through*.

* de fole vie Concerning women * of il life *that* follow the court after thei have forsworne the court : being taken againe, thei shalbe marked in the fore-hed with an hote iron. The thirde time thei shalbe imprisoned, as is aforesaid of men.

¹Al these pointes shalbe proclaimed in the household now at the first three daies, so as everi one that followeth the court may have resonable warning; & the yere after, it shalbe proclaimed everi sonday.

Also in as much as complaint hath been made to the *said* Stewarde of the great charge of people that followe the marshalcy where-soever the kinge goe, in much greter number then was wont to be, or of right ought to be, suffered; concerning these, the Counsel hath ordained that the auntient custome which was used in the daies of the late kinge, & in the times of former erles, marshals, shal from henceforth be fulli held & used :—Nameh, there shalbe the Erle him-self in this place, & a knight lieutenant to the Earle, & a clarke under him, & one other to write his rolles. The erle shal also have a serjant to make attachementes & herberges, & he shal have under him a foote-man to doe execution of the billes. And the erle shal also have a vallet for the prison.

¹ p. 56.

[Continued on the next page.]

p. 44. *The Keeper of the King's Hounds.* Compare the following from J. Bridges's *History of Northamptonshire* (ed. Rev. P. Whalley), 1791; vol. ii, p. 358, col. 2. "In the tenth year of Edw. II. died John Lovell, seized of one messuage and one carucate of land with its appurtenances in Weldon parva, which he held of the crown *in capite*, by the service of keeping, at his own charge, fifteen of the king's hounds, every year in Lent. These were the lands, we suppose, which the sheriff of the county, in the first of Hen. III., was directed to give possession of to Hamon le Venor, or the Hunter. Leaving no male issue, the premises devolved to Margery, his daughter, the wife of Thomas de Borchunt. On paying a fine of xls. in the fourteenth of this reign for a relief, the said Thomas and Margery de Borchunte had livery of this estate. He died in the fourteenth year of Edw. III., Margery, his wife, surviving him, and was succeeded by John, his son, a minor under nineteen years of age."

[ORDINANCE FOR THE STATE OF THE WARDROBE
AND THE ACCOUNT OF THE HOUSEHOLD.]

16. E. 2. (June 1323.¹)

[*Ashm. MS. 1147, art. iii, p. 56.*]

The ordinance for the state of the warderobe, & the account of the houshold, made & assented to in the presence of *our* sovereigne lord the kinge, by the honorable fathers *William* de Melton, archbishop of yorke; *Walter* de Stapleton, bishop of Excester, Thresurer *Walter* de Norwich, Roger de Belers, & other barons of thexcheker, being of the kinges counsel, at Yorke, in the moneth of June, in the yere of the raigne of kinge Edwarde, sonne of kinge Edwarde the xvjth.

(1) for as much as the accountes of the warderobe ²are gretli delaied for divers occasions, it is ordained that no mony be paied nor assigned from henceforth to make purveiance for the kinges houshold or other thinges, for which the garden of the warderobe should account, except it be bi his owne hande delivered, or paied by warrant of his *lettres*. It is also ordained that he shal a[l]waies have sufficient mony in the warderobe.

(2) Also th' account of the houshold expenses shalbe h[e]arde everi day, or everi other day when the court sojorneth, except the steward & thresorer be imploied in other greter affaires. And the *statutes* of the houshold wil, that if three daies passe with-out account, when the court sojorneth, the steward & thresorer shal pay of their owne purses one daies expenses; & thei shal inflict the like penalti³ upon the inferiour officers if thei be not reddi to account everi daye.

(3) Also the great Butler shal make one view of al his office in the warderobe, the day after S^t Hillary, & an other view at S^t John baptistes day, & a final account at martlemas, upon the paine before written.

¹ The following Englishing of the French original is also by Francis Tate, A.D. 1601. ² p. 57. ³ penance.

(4) The clarke *purveiour* of the great wardrobe shal view his office once at S^t Andrewe-tide, & againe in Trinity-weeke, & make a final account at michaelmas followinge upon the former paine.

(5) Al other forrein ministers *which* ought to account in the wardrobe shal make a special view of their account every quarter or halfe yere, at the plesure of the gardein of the wardrobe. So that the *accountes* of the wardrobe for one quarter may be finished & perfected in the next quarter after, & given up into the *exchequer* in the ende of the yere, the day after Candlemas in peaceable times, & so forth from yere to yere, without further delai or excuse.

(6) ¹Also that al the ministers that should account in the wardrobe when thei are warned by the garden of the wardrobe, ²*comme* not to take view, to account, or do that *which* appertaineth to their account, then let them be put out of the *kinges* service for ever, & greuously punished. And let their names & their charge be delivered to the barons of the *exchequer*, to take their goodes, chattels, & body, & to sue them in the *kinges* behalfe, as such who should account according to the lawe & custome of the *exchequer*.

(7) Also the clarkes of the office shall account for their *sommes* by the moneth or bi the quarter, according to the discretion of garden of the wardrobe, & that upon the paine aforesaid.

(8) He that accounteth in the wardrobe & is in arrearages, shalbe delivered to the marshals, & there detained til he have made agreement for his arrearages.

(9) And for as much as the last yeeres account is verri diffuse, & requireth great delay to have it wel arraied for the *purveiances* of vittails & payment of wages in the time of warre, & many other waighti reasons: It is ordained *that* the Coffrer that hath made the *paymentes*, take helpe to him if need be, & attend wholly to the arraying of the account, & let *commandement* be given him in the *kinges* name to do it fulli & spedeli. And that an other be in his steed made Cofferer the beginning of the xvijth yere, in the meane time to hasten th*accountes* of the yere past, for *peraventure* he can not do both but with great delay. And let him first heere the *accountes* of the household in the same household after the feast of S^t

¹ p. 53.

² selonc les dites services.

michael. if the thresurer of the warderobe thinke good to tarri at London to heere ¹the forren *accountes*, so as he may certefy the *exchequer* of such as come not to bringe them to account before him. And such *Coffrer* as shalbe so ordained a-new for the meane seson shal houlde the course aforesaid for the *xpence* of the warderobe.

(10) As to the houshold it-self, let a convenient mene be ordained, & the names in certain delivered to the *said* warden & to the *clarke* of the *marshalsy*.

And that the ministres of the houshold be fit & sufficient men, & raskals be removed from everi office.

(11) The *paiment* of thinges *purveied* for the houshold on ordinari daies, except the great *purveiances* & the *pulletrie*, shalbe made in the warderobe in the *presence* of the *clarkes* of the offices, for then the *tresurer* of the warderobe may better see & examine the *achates* for the *kinges profet*.

(12) Also for making the great *purveiance* in faires of great bestes, against the Parliament or great feast; let the bestes be viewed when thei come to the Court, bi the *steward* & *thresurer* of the houshold if thei can attende it, or bi the *Controller*, the *chiefe usher* of the halle being a knight, & the *clarke* of the kitchen² to whom it *properli* appertaineth to see such *achates*; & if thei see the *achate* is convenient & fit, then, when time serveth, thei mai cause three of the bestes of that *buy*[i]ng to be killed, that is, one of the *hyghest* price, an other of a *midle* price, & a *thirde* of the lowest price. And the *Controller* or his *clarke* should be at the *cutting* out of the bestes, & write downe how many messe the best beste wil make, how many the *midle* ³beste, & how many the worst of them maketh. And this he must testefy at the account in the warderobe; & if it happen their be any bestes which are not worth the price thei were bought at, thei may cast them upon the buyer, so as if he have made a *folish* bargain, the damage mai light upon him.

(13) Touching the *purveiance* of heringe & great fish, let it be

¹ p. 59.

² See the duties of Henry VIII.'s Clerk of the Kitchen and Controller, in Francis Thynne's *Animadversions* (Hindwords, p. xxii, xxxi, E. E. T. S., 1865, 2nd ed. 1875); and these, and those of other kings' officers, in the *Household Ordinances* of the Society of Antiquaries.

³ p. 60.

ordained that it be done in due seson ; & let the quantiti of the *purveiance* & the price be forth-with certefied into the warderobe, & the fishe viewed bi the controller, chiefe vsher of the hal, & the clarke of the kitchen, as is aforesaid of the *purveiance* of flesh. And it is to be knowen, that of *somme* manner of fish the hundred containeth six score, & of some other sort, nine score.

(14) Concerning the great *purveiance* of wines against *parliament* or solemne feast, let the *purveiance* be surveied as aforesaid, that is, everi clarke where the wines shalbe ¹ couched, how many tunnes are in everi celler, & that everi tunne be fulle & tasted bi the Controller, chiefe vsher of the hal, clarke of the buttery, so as if any tonel be found to be corrupt in any sort, & not sound for mans body to drinke, let the botome of the tonel be knocked out, & the wine spilt, & the losse ly on the Butler which bought such wine. The number of tonnes & the prise shalbe testefied bi the controller in the warderobe ; & after the *parliament* or feast ended, the kinge shal cause a * enoilles view to be taken bi the controller, & the tonnes *perced, & then let it be examined whether the allowance of wine made in the household agree with the receipt & remaines of the wine.

(15) ²Also in the office of the marshals there ought to be two clarkes & two valletes de mestier, wherof the one is named Clarke of the march³ : & the other clarke of the Avenery. The clarke of the avenery & one of the vallets de mestier shal go thorough the cuntry to make *purveyance* of hey & oates, & send it to the howshold ; & the clarke of the marchaulcy & the other vallet de mestier must remaine at the household to receive the said *purveiance*, & deliver it out for the kinges horses. And that clark of the merchauley ^{† deit getter et enbrever} †ought to account & set downe daily in his roll what ^{‡ vakent} clarkes, valletes, serjantes, are at wages, when they ‡be absent & when they come ; & therof to make bills with his owne hand-writinge from halfe-yere to halfe-yere, to be delivered into the warderobe, for their accountes at the *paimentes*. If they do it not, they shalbe punished by the discretion of the steward & § gardein § master of the wardrobe.

(16) It must be remembred, concerning the Baker & his people,

¹ herberges.

² p. 61.

³ market crossed through in MS.

that are at the kinges charge, that they deliver no more bred then strange bakers.

(17) It must be remembred that the kinge should offer every day a great peny, which shal way vij^d. This peny the thresorer of the
 * baudra warderobe shal * deliver to the kinge at foure feastes in the yere ; that is to say, at the feast of al *Saintes*, New-yeres-tyde, Easter & whitsonside. And at these iiij feastes the thresorer & the Cofferer sha^{ll} bringe C^s. devided into ij silver basens, of which they should *profer* to every one a peny, which wil offer in that chapel. And this they *commonly* do also at the service of the dead, which † *faits per espalte* † be specially done before the kinge in his chapel or other church.

‡ le jour de la Tyflayne Also the kinge should offer in certaine uppon † the feast of Epiphany, a florence, with mirrh & incence, severally tyed in a silk cloth, in remembrance of the three kinges ; this offringe must be delivered hym by the *said* thresorer.

¹ Also the kinge ought, every feast of St. Thomas of *Canterbury*, offer at the shrine of S^t Tho. at Cant., or send one thither to offer for him at that feast, the floreins of Florence, in name of Chivage.

Also the kinge should offer certainly at the crosse vpon the day of the great friday, five shillinges, which he was accustomed to
 § recevoir devers lui de sa main le chappelain a faire ent a mieulx a doner pur medicine § receive to him from the hand of his Chaplein to give it for medicine to divers people, & to put therto other
 v^s. And if *our* lordes thorne be there, he should offer to the thorne iiij^s. And at the crosse of the resurrection, vpon Easter-day, v^s.

Also the kinge doth accustomably offer a davon by special devocion, a florein of florence vpon the feast of S^t John thevangelist in Christmas. And vpon the feast of the purification of *our* lady, the like floreins. When the kinge should offer mony to relikes or alters in churches, he should offer vij^s of custome. And of auncient custome, the kinges Almoner should receive in the warderobe, at each of the foresaid foure feastes, xxv^s for the pouerte of CC powre, in honour of the said feastes.

Hitherto the old parchment booke.

EXTRACTS FROM

EDWARD IV'S HOUSEHOLD BOOK,

ASHMOLE MS. 1147*, AND HARLEIAN MS. 642,

SHOWING THE DUTIES OF HIS

SQUIRES, AND VALETS OR YEOMEN OF THE CHAMBER,

WITH

CHAUCER'S OATH

AS CONTROLLER OF THE CUSTOMS.

* The only clause in this Ashm. MS. 1147, art. iv, p. 34, applying to Chaucer's later office of Clerk of the Works,—which he held from July 12, 1389, to June 17, 1391,—is:—

“lxij. Clarke of Werkis called by the noble Edward Clere *des Oovers du roy*, *preingt sa gages, fees, et lautre choses appartenantes a son office, par l'assignement du Tresorer Dengleterre, de hors le Charge du loistelle du Roy*: This Clarke hath noe duty belonging to him in this houshold by vertue of his Office outward. But & he be appointed by the Soueraigne of houshold to take Wages & Clothing in the houshold, it mought cause him to be more carefull to apply all necessary thinges to be made for the offices & officers in houshold, & then he taketh liuery as squiers in houshold.”

EXTRACTS FROM EDWARD IV'S
HOUSEHOLD BOOK.

[*Ashm. MS. 1147, art. iv, p. 15, by Francis Tate.*]

Domus Regis Angl. t. E. 4.

Ca. xxx^{mo}. Esquiers for the body, iiij, of the noble patient condicion, sitting in the Kinges Chamber & Hall with a person of like seruice, & that his Knightes seruice; taken for his Chamber & liuery at night, *dimidium* a chet lofe, j quart wine, j. gallon ale; & for winter liuery, from alhollantide till Ester, j percher waxe, j Candle, waxe, ij Candles parich, j tallwode *dimidium* wages in the Compting-house when he is presente in Court, daily allowed him¹ vij d. ob., & Clothing with the houshold for winter & Sommer, or els xl^s keeping with'in this Court; but ij seruantes; liuery sufficiently for their horses in the Cuntry by the Herbenger. And if any of them be sicke, he shall take sicke liuery with Knightes for a while, litter & Rushes all the yeare &c. ij persones.

¹ ? crosst out in MS.

¹LIBER NIGER DOMUS REGIS
EDWARDI IV.

(A.D. 1461—82.)

[²*Harl. MS. 642, leaf 38.*]

³Esquiers for the Body, fower, noble of Conditions, whereof allwaye two be attendant on the Kinges person, to array him and vnarray him, watche day and night, and to dresse him in his cloathes: and⁴ they be callers to the Chamberlaine, if any thinge lacke for his person or plesaunce: theyre⁵ busines is in many secrettes, some sitting in the Kinges Chambre, some in the hall, with persones of like seruice, which is callid 'Knyghtes Seruice,' Taking euerych of them for his Liuerie at night, dimidium cheete loofe, one quart wyn, one gallon ale; And for winter Liuerie, from Alhallowintyde till Eastre, one percher wex, one candle wex, two candles paris, one tallwod⁶ dimidium, And wages in the Countinghouse: if he be presente in Court, daily, seauen pence halfepenny, and cloathing with the howsold, winter and summer⁷, or fortie shillinges besides his other fee of Iewelhouse, or of the Thesaurer of Englund; and besides, his watcheing cloathing of Chambre, of the Kinges Wardrobe. He hath abyding into this Court but two servauntes, Liuerie sufficient for his horses in the Countrie by the herberger⁸. ⁹And if any Squier for the body be lett blood¹⁰, or elles forewatchid, he shall haue sike liuerie with Knightes, litter and Rushes all the yeare of the Sergeaunt Vsher of the hall and Chambre: oftentimes these stand in steade of Caruers and Cupbearers.

¹ Printed in *Household Ordinances*, 1790, p. 36, from another MS., or some one's fancy, though the book says it's printed from Harl. 642.

² The titlepage of the MS. is "*Basilica Economia* | Or severall Ordinances, / Rules and Orders for the Go/vernment of the Howsheold / of the Kings and Queenes of / England / And their Children, both of / former and of later times / An / Exact Index of which parti/culers is inserted in the next / page ensuinge / And a large Table is placed at the / end off the Booke of y^e Contents / of the whole /"

³ MS. Contents (Tabula), 'De Sentiferarijs pro Corpore Regis, f. 38, a.'

⁴ MS. and if.

⁵ MS. his: *print* theyre.

⁶ *print* tallwood.

⁷ MS. sunner.

⁸ *print* Kings herberger.

⁹ leaf 38, back.

¹⁰ This lettyng blode, or clystryng, is to avoyde pestylence; and therefore the people take lyverey out of courte, and not for every syknesse in man contynuyng in this courte. *H. Ord.*, p. 34, under *Knyghts of Household*, xii.

[*Ashm. MS. 1147, art. iv, p. 18.*]

Ca. xxxvj^{to}. yeomen of Chamber, iiij, to make the beddes, to beare & hold the torches before the King, to hang the Chamber, & such other *seruices*, at the *Commaundement* of the Chamberlaine, or Gent' Vsher in his absence. They eate in the Kinges Chamber or hall, as the Vshers will assigne, taking for their wages allowed, euery man daily, yf he be *presente* in Court, by the Chekkeroll iiij^d, & Clothing with the household, winter & sommer, & changes for euery-ech of them yearly, or els in money xvij^s, besides their watching clothing of the wardrobe. The *statutes* of noble Edward will give one of them for his daily expenses out of Court, iiij d. Allsoe it hath bine accustomed, one of these yeomen to be yeoman Surgeon. Allsoe their expences out of Court, sent by the Chamber-lyen for matters of the Chamber, are payd in the Iewel-house. And alwayes ij of these yeomen haue into the Court j honest *seruant*. The Remanent at their *liuery*, assigned by the Herbenger, with the yeomen of Crowne. And if any of them be sicke, he taketh *liuery*, ij loues, j messe of great meat for all day, j gallon ale, & carriage of the King for their competent bedding, by the Comptrollers ouersight and assignement. viij persons.

[*Ashm. MS. 1147, art. iv, p. 26.*]

Ca. xlviij. Squiers of houshold xl, and more yf it plesse the King, with advise of his high Councell: chosen men in worship & of great worth; Also to be of sundry shires, to knowe the *disposicion* of the Cuntries; & of these, to be continually in Court, xx squiers *attendantes* vppon the Kinges person, in Riding and going, & to *serue* his table from *serveyeng* bourd & other places, as the Kinges

De valectis Camere Regis¹.

²Yeomen of Chambre iiij, to make beddis, to beare or hold torches, to sett boardis, to apparell all Chambers, and such othir seruices as the Chamberlaine, or Vshers of Chambre, comaunde or assigne; to attend the Chambre; to watche the King by course; to goe in messages, &c.; Taking for there wages, as yomen of Crowne doe in the Checkerrole, and cloathing like³, beside there watchinge cloathing of the Kinges Wardrober. The statutes of noble Edward would giue but one of these, for his expenses out of Court, but fowerpence. And it hath bene seene often, that one of these yeomen hath be⁴ also yeoman Surgean, for twey causes. Also two of these dyne and sope in the Chambre; Also there expenses out of Court, sent by the Chamberlaine or Vshers, then to be paid in the Jewelhouse. And allway two of these yomen haue one honest seruant into Court. The remanent at there liuerey, assigned by the herberger⁵, togedre, or with the yomen of crowne, sufficiently lodgid; And if any of them be lett blood, or sicke, then to haue as the yomen of the Crowne⁶, and Carriage by the Contrroller competent; two men to a bedd.

[Harl. MS. 642, leaf 55, H. Ord., p. 45.]

⁷Squires of Housold xl: or moe if it please the Kinge, by the aduise of his highe Counsell; to be chosen men of their possession, worship, and wisdom; Also to be of sundrie shires, by whome it may be knowne the disposition of the Countries: And of these, to be continually in this Court, twentie Squires attendantes on the Kinges person, in ryding and goinge at all times; And to helpe

¹ Tabula, leaf 5, back, with a wrong reference to the Groomes or *Garciones*.

² leaf 43, back.

³ "dayly . . . iii d., and clothing for wynter and somer, and chaunces yerely, or elles xviii s., besides there watchyng clothing of the Kings warderobe." *H. Ord.*, p. 38.

⁴ leaf 44.

⁵ *print* Kings herberger.

⁶ Daily, "one caste of bredde, one messe of greete mete, one gallon ale; and if it be of greet siknesse, he must remove out of courte, or any other." *H. Ord.*, p. 39.

⁷ De Armigeris hospicij, fol. 55 a, et 123 a, 132 a et b. Tabula, leaf 6*.

Sewer will assigne them. Alsoe by assent amongst them all, some to *serue* the Chamber at one tyme, some the Hall at another-tyme, of euery messe that commeth from the dressing bourd to their handes for such *seruice*, Soe that thereof be nothing *with-drawen* by them, vppon such paine as the Steward, Tresorer, comptroller, or the Iudges at the Compting bourd in their absence, after their demerites, will award; They eating in the Hall, sitting together at both meales after, as they *serue*, by assent. This was the old manner, both for honour & profett of the King & his Court, euery each of them taketh for his liuery at night, *dimidium* gallon ale; And for winter season, each of them ij *Candles parice*, j *faggot* or els *dimidium tallwood*. And when any of them is *presente* in Court, him is allowed for *wages* daily in the Checkroll *viij. ob.*¹; And clothing winter & sommer, of the Comptinghouse, or els *xl.*², it hath euer bine in speciall Charge to squiers in this Court to weare the Coulour of the Kinges liuery Customably, for the more glory, & in worshippinge this honorable houshold. And euery of them to have into thes Court j honest *servant*, And liuery in the Cuntry for their horses and other *servantes*, or in the Towne, by the Harbenger deliuered sufficiently, as they be coupled bed fellowed. And if any of them be sicke in Court, or neere therto, He taketh for liuery, ij *loues*, ij messe of great meat, j gallon ale for all day, And litter all the yeare of the *seriant* Vsher, for their beddes in Court. And if any of these squiers be sent out of Court by Steward, Tresorer, Comptroller, or other of the comptinghouse, for any matter touching the comptinghouse or the houshold, then he hath daily allowed *xij.*^d. Alsoe they pay for the carriage of their bedding and ther Harnes in Court. And none of them taketh *parte* of any reward given to the houshold at any tyme, But if any such giver to Squiers of Houshold by themselues, a part from Chamber & Hall, & that by expresse names and wordes, they ought nor ar the[y] to depart from Court *with-out* leau: by the speciall act of noble Edward, they shall not keepe noe houndes within the Court. *iiij.*^{xx} *persons*.

obolus is a halfpenny

serue his table from the Surueying board, and from other places, as the Assewer will assigne; also, by theire Comyn assent, to assigne amongst them selues, some to serue the Kinges Chambre, at one day, weeke¹, or time; some to serue the hall at another time, of euery messe that cometh from the dressing bourd to there handes for such seruice, So that therof be nothing withdrawe by these Squires, vpon such payne as ²Styward, Thesaurer, or Controller, or, in theire absence, other Iudges at [the] Counting bourd, woole awarde, after there demerrittes. It may be that the King take[th] into housold in all, ³fortie Squires; and yet amongst them all, twentie take not the whole wages of the yeare; wherfore the numbere of persons may be receaued and sufferid the better in the Checkerrolle, for a worship, and the Kinges profit saued. They eaten in the hall, sitting togedre at any of the both mealis, as they serve; some the first meate, some the latter, by assent. This hathe bene allway the manner amongst them, for honour [and] profit to the Kinge, and ease to them selfe. euery each of them taketh for his Liurey at night, dimidium gallon ale; And for winter season, each of them taketh two candles parris, one faggott or elles dimidium tallwood; and when any of them is present in Court, him is allowed for daily wagis in the Checkerroolle, seauen pence halfepenny, and cloathing winter and summer⁴, or elles fortie shillinges. It hath euer bene in special charge to Squires in this Court, to weare the Kinges liurey ⁵Customably, for the more glorie, and in worshipping this honorable housold; ⁶and euery of them to haue into this Court one honest seruant, and suffisaunt liurey, in the townes or Countrey, for theire horses and other seruantes, by the herberger; two gentlemen lodgid togedre, as they be coupled bedfellowes by the Gentlemen Vshers: And if any of them be lett blood, or sicke, in Court, or nighe therto, he taketh liurey in eating daies, two loais, two messe of grete meate, one gallon ale for all day, and litter, all the yeare, of the Sergeant Vsher of the hall for there bedis in Court; And if any of these Squires be sent out of Court by [the] Styward, Thesaurer, Controller, or other of the Counting house, for matter touching the housold, then he hath daily

¹ MS. wole, *print* weeke.² leaf 55, back.³ *print* 60.⁴ MS. sunner.⁵ leaf 56.⁶ *Sidenote*: One seruant a peice.

allowed hym xij^d by petition. Also, they pay for there carriage of harnes in Court¹. They take no part of the generall giiftes, neither with Chambre nor hall, But if the giuer giue them specially a parte by expresse name or wordes. none of these should depart from Court, but by license of Styward, Thesaurer, or souerainz of the Counting house, that knowe howe the King is accompanied best; And to take a daye² when they shall come againe, vpon paine of losse of wages at his next comeing. That noe Sergeant of office, nor Squire, nor yoman, nor groome, but as be appointed in this booke, to dyne or sope out of halle and³ Kinges Chambre; nor to⁴ withdrawe any seruice, or elles to hurt or little the Allmesse of hall or Chambre, vpon such paine as the soueraines of howsold woole award by the statutes of noble Edward the Third, In none office, &c. hit hath bene often, in daies bifore, comaundid by the Counting house, that in feriall dayes, after that the Kinge and Queene, and ther Chambres, and the soueraines of housold in the hall, be seruid, that then such honest yomen of howsold be callid or assignid to serue from the dressour to the hall, the remanent, specially suche as bere wages, that if any seruice be withdrawne by them, that then they to be corrected therfore. These Esquires of housold of old

Nota pro Antient order amongst these Esquirs. be accustomed, winter and summer⁵, in afternoones and in eueninges, to drawe to Lordes Chambres within Court, there to keep honest company after there Cunnige, in talking of Cronicles of Kinges, and of others⁶ Pollicies, or in pipeing or harpeing, songinges⁷, or other actes marcealls, to helpe to occupie the Court, and accompanie estraingers, till the time require of departing.

[A Squire's yearly Allowances, and their Cost £51.]

Harl. MS. 642, leaf 57.]

⁸ *Domus nona et vltima que hic fundat sub tali forma, videlicet, vnus Armigeri de possessione clare in Anglia, per Annum, super* } L. li.

¹ *Sidenote*: No Carriage.

² leaf 56, back.

³ *print or.*

⁴ *print do.*

⁵ MS. sunner.

⁶ leaf 57. ?for others read other, with the print in *H. Ord.*

⁷ *print synginge.*

⁸ This Latin and account are not in the printed *H. Ord.*

Proneidat Seneschallus siue Gubernator cuius-
cunque domus, quod capiat primam Septimanam per
polliciam in adiutorium totius Anni sequentis. Et quod
habet de remanenti Stauro &c quando incepit

} Si potest

xiiij loavis bake in housold,

iiij d.

viiij gallons mene ale in housold,

iiij d.

Pro Sidre to helpe the dayes, or mede—sine pretio.

in boefe daily, or mutton fresh, or elles all poudred
is more auaille,

} v d.

Motton dayly bought,

ij d.

Pro dietario ad xx d. inde : Bacon, Porkes, veelis, venison, Pigges,
Lambys, capones, hennys, Chickens, Cony, pidgeons, egges, milke,
cheese of fower kyne to the paille, herbage, onions, garlike, &c., by
husbandrie and helpe of one daye with another, de staure, vj d.,
Summa diet to

xx d.

Summa Anni,

xxiiij li. vj s.

eightpence.

¹Item for wood, cole, Candle, Saute dayly, salte and
otemeale,

} ij d.

In like wise these twentie pence, in fishe daies, must be deuided
by husbandrie and helpe of Riuers and pondes, &c.

Pro camera et reparacione vesture, simul cum obla-
tionibus et elemosinis. Summa per annum,

} iiij li.

Pro necessarijs domus emendis reparandis, cum ex-
pensis forum, &c. Summa

} C s.¹

Pro emptione et excambijs equorum, carriagiorum,
feni, et aliorum, per Annum estimatur, Summa

} iiij li.

Pro vadijs vnus Clerici, xl s.; duorum valetorum,—
iiij li.; duorum garcionum ad—xl s.; et duorum pu[er]-
rorum,—xx s.; per An[n]um. Summa

} ix li.

Pro robis x. personarum per Annum in lib[er]atione; summa, Ls.

Pro canibus et nisis plus constant quam conferunt.
Summa

} iij s. iiij d.

Pro fena et auenis de pratis et Campis domini, per
Annum, et falcacione et impositione feni et litteri.
Summa

} xx s.

Summa huius Domus,

L. li.

Pro sex honestis vacuis personis seruientibus, absque paruulis et
omnibus laborarijs infra, one bushell brasilij boni ²potest satis
respondere ad xij gallons communis Ceruitij, ad valorem cuiuslibet
gallonij, j s.

¹ leaf 57, back.² leaf 58.

CHAUCER'S OATH AS CONTROLLER OF THE
CUSTOMS.

[Tho' this is from an Elizabethan MS. we know how old forms of oaths continue, and we may fairly assume that this is the one Chaucer took on entering on his Custom-house duties in the Thames Street of his boyhood, in 1374, when he was about 34.]

[*Ashm. MS. 1147, art. iv, page 77.*]

The Oth of the Comptroler of the Customes.

YE shall swere, that well and faithfully ye shall serve the kinge in thoffice of Comptroller of the Customes and the kinges Subsedies in the porte of L[ondon], and faithfully ye shall enter the thinges customeable *which* shall cum to the saide porte or passe from the same; And that ye shall take noe gifte for *your* office doinge, nor for non other thinge *which* may fall to the disadvauntage of the kinge; Nor ye shall suffer noe merchandises, nor noe other thinges customeable, to passe out of the said porte *without* paying of due custome; And that ye shall doe the said office, and dwell vpon the same, in your *proper person*, *without* puttinge any Substitut vnder you. And ye shall writ the rolles by *your* owne hande demesned; And the proffite of the kinge, ye shall awayte to doe as moche ¹as in you is, accordinge to your knowledge and to your power: Soe god helpe you, and the holye Evangelistes.

¹ page 78.

GLOSSARIAL INDEX.

- Abbies*, the sick to be sent to, p. 53
- Absence* from Court, rules respecting (Edw. IV), 70
- Account*, nature of the, for xvith year Edward II, 52
It is to be arranged speedily, 59
To be heard daily, 7, 58
For foreign ministers, 59
Penalty for not coming to, 59
- Account in Wardrobe*: Controller to testify concerning beasts at, 60
- Accountes of Houshold*: Usher of king's chamber to report daily at, 18
Spicery clerk to answer for parcels, etc. delivered at his office at, 10
- Accounts*, rule concerning, 49, 50
- Accustomably*, by custom, 62
- Achate* (purchase), 20, et passim. Chaucer Prologe, l. 571. "O.Fr. Achepter, to buy; Fr. Acheter, etc."—Morris, Glossary.
- Achates* of flour to be made for king's best profit and people's least grievance, 25
- Achators*, 2, kitchen officers, 31.
See *Achates*.
- Adam de Bowyer*, 55
- Advisement*, 53
- Akers*, scourers of kitchen utensils, 33
- Ale*, one galon, for steward's chamberlain, 6
- Allowances* (during absence): to horse doctor when absent from Hall, iiij d. a day, 41
Baker, iiij d. ob. in pantry roll, 26
Herbergeour of cart horses when abroad on business, iij d. a day, 41
Achators absent from Court for their bouch, iiij d. ob., 31
To Hall valets de mestiers when out of Court about their office, ij d. a day, 21
Avenerye clerk when out of Court, iiij d. ob. a day, 39
To valets of king's chamber when sent out of Court, iij d. a day, 19
- Allowances*: to palfreours and somters, ij d. a day, 52
Poulterer, xls. a day, 35
Valets de mestiers (Hall) for shoes, iiij s. iiij d., 21, and throughout
To almoner for distribution when travelling, xiiij s. from wardrobe, 15
To surgeon for medicines, xls. a year, 16
To waferer for his office, viij d. a day in pantry roll, 25
To huntsman for each dog's puture, or food, j d. a day, 44
Ferretter for puture of ferrets, j d., 45
Partringer for two dogs' puture, each, ob.; for 2 falcons' puture, or food, each, ob., 45
For lodging horses, 48
For horses to serjants at armes, 19
Valet herbergeour for cresset, ij d., 40

(Allowances continu'd)

- To baker for fornage, iij d. a day, 26
 Lawnders for ashes and fuel, xxvj s. viij d. at wardrobe, 27
 To Squires of Household when absent, 12 d. a day (Edw. IV), 68, 70
Allowances for Robes: Treasurer, 16 marks, 6
 King's chamberlain, chamberlain as banneret of household, 16 marks, 7
 Controller's chamberlain, 8 marks, 8
 2 clerks of counting table, each 16 s. 8 d., 8
 Clerk privy seal, 8 marks, 9
 3 clerks privy seal, money according to their wages, 9
 Clerk purveyor for wardrobe, 8 marks, 9
 Spicery clerk, 16 s. 8 d., 10
 Under spicery clerk—clerk's robes, 20 s., 12
 Under usher of wardrobe, 40 s., 12
 Valets de mestiers, 1 mark, 12
 Fruiterer, 40 s., 13
 Chandler, 46 s. 8 d., 14
 Confessor's 3 boys, each 10 s. a year, 14
 Chief chaplain (dean), 8 marks, 15
 Almoner, 8 marks, 15
 Under almoner, 20 s., 16
 Physician, 8 marks, 16
 Surgeon, 8 marks, 16
 Market coroner, 3 marks and a half, 17
 3 squires for king's month, 40 s., 18
 12 squires for king's chamber, 40 s., 18
 2 ushers of king's chamber, 40 s., 18
 4 squires for king's body (Edw. IV), 40 s., 64, 65
 4 yeomen of chamber (Edw. IV), 18 s., 66, 67
 2 valets of king's chamber, 1 mark, 19
 30 serjeants at armes, each 46 s. 8 d., 20
 Chief usher of Hall's chamberlain, 8 marks, 20

(Allowances for Robes continu'd)

- 2 serjeant ushers of Hall, 1 mark, 21
 2 knights marshals of Hall, 8 marks, 22
 2 serjeants marshals of Hall, 46 s. 8 d., 22
 2 assayers, 40 s., 22
 24 Hall squires, 40 s., 23
 Clerk of pantry and buttery, 46 s. 8 d., 23
 Under clerk of pantry and buttery, 20 s., 24
 Serjeant paneter, 46 s. 8 d., 24
 Serjeant paneter for king, 46 s. 8 d., 24
 Waferer, 40 s., 25
 Serjeant baker, 46 s. 8 d., 26
 Naper, 40 s., 26
 Ewer, 40 s., 27
 Launder, king's, 26 s. 8 d., 27
 Launder of napery, 26 s. 8 d., 27
 Chief butler, household, 46 s. 8 d., 28
 Serjeant butler, household, 46 s. 8 d., 28
 Kitchen chief clerk, 46 s. 8 d., 31
 2 achators, 46 s. 8 d., 31
 2 cooks, king's, 46 s. 8 d., 32
 2 cooks, household, 46 s. 8 d., 32
 Lardner, 40 s., 35
 Garbager, 20 s., 36
 Scullery serjeant, 40 s., 36
 Scullery serjeant for silver, 46 s. 8 d., 37
 Porter, 47 s. 8 d., 38
 Marshals clerk, 46 s. 8 d., 39
 Avenry clerk, 40 s., 39
 Warden of palfreys, 47 s. 8 d., 40
 Herberger of sommers, 40 s., 41
 Serjeant marshal (horse doctor), 46 s. 8 d., 41
 Valet carnaver, 10 s., 42
 20 charioteers, 20 s., 43
 23 someters, 10 s., 43
 12 messengers, 1 mark, 46
 Valets, stable, 10 s., 43
 Hackney man, $\frac{1}{2}$ mark, 43
 23 archers, 10 s., 46
 Stud-groom, 40 s., 44
 Huntsman, 40 s., 45
 Ferreter, 1 mark, 45
 Partringer, 1 mark, 45
 Oyesclour, 1 mark, 45

- All Saints*, 62; fuel for dinner-time allowed from, to Easter even, 6
- Almoner*, chief, 51, 62; chaplain, 15
- Alms*: food, etc. for almoner's office, 15, 51
- '*Annote the walsh*,' ? Annette the Welshwoman or foreigner, 55
- Apples* provided by fruiterer, 13
- Apposed*, he shall be, 26
- Archbishop of York*, ordinances read and assented to in presence of, 5, 58
- Archers*, 46
twenty-three on foot, 51
- Armes*, serjants at, 19
- Armourer*, king's, charge for, 11
- Arrerages*, 50, 59
- Ashes and fuel*, allowances for, 27
- Assayers*, 22
- Assecour* of king's table, 31
- Assise*, 13, fixed measure and weight ordained by statute—modern. Verb, to assize.
Of bread, etc., to be proclaimed by coroner, 17
- Avant alour*, foregoer, 53
- Avenery*, office of oats (Fr. *avoine*), 38, 51; to be surveyed by controller, 7
Clerk of the (Marshalsy), 61
Purveyances, etc., 41
- Bailiffs*, to aid marshals, 55
- Bakehouse*, 25
- Baker*, 25, 61
- bankins*, banker, 21; Fr. "*banquier*, a bench-cloth, or a carpet for a forme or bench."—Cotgrave. To be kept by the Fuer.
- Banneret*, privileges of steward if he be a, 5, 6
Privileges of chamberlayne if he be a, 6, 7
- Barils*, 44; ? under, lower: *Nourri dans vn barril*. "Brought vp in a Tub (a speech vsed to the disgrace, or as a description, of a simple, ignorant, vnexperienced, and home-bred hoydon)."—Cotgrave. It can hardly mean the servants of the '*Barillier* . . . an officer that tends, and lookes to, the caske of a great mans sellor.'—*Ib.*
- Barons of Exchequer*, 58
To sue those who do not come to the account, 59
- Barthemew de Baddesmere*, steward of household, commanded to prepare ordinances, 5
- Beare*: allowances of 5 chamberlaynes, 6, 7; and other officers, 6—46
- Beasts*, purveyance of great, 60
- Beds*: in king's chamber to be made by valets, 19; by yeomen, 66
Serjant of scullery's, to be carried in carriages of his office, 36
1 for 2 buttery porters carried in buttery carriage, 30
1 for 2 valets of scullery to be carried in carriages of office, 37
Under clerk and valets of pantry's to be carried in pantry charges, 24
2 sauser valets, 1 to be carried in carriage of their offices, 38
For pantry men to be carried in pantry carriages, pp. 24, 25
Naper's, to be carried in carriages of his office, 26
1 for larder valets, and 1 for 2 larder porters, to be carried in larder carriages, 34
1 for 2 valets, bakers to be carried in bakehouse carriages, 26
For valets wine-drawer and verser to be carried in butler's cart, 29
2 valets of pitcher house carried in carriages of pitcher house, 29
Under usher's to be carried in carriages of wardrobe, 12
Yeomen of chamber, to have car-

- riage for one to each two of them (Edw. IV), 66
- Bedes*, confessor allowed livery for, from wardrobe, 14
- Berner*, dog, kept by king's huntsman, 45
- best best*, 60
- Bills* of valets, etc., and their wages to be delivered to the wardrobe, 61
- Executions of the, 55
- Bishops* of Ely, of Norwich, and of Salisbury, ordinances read and assented to in presence of, 5, 58
- Of Exeter, 58
- Bowrd*, *dressing*, 68; dresser, kitchen dresser
- Bowrd*, *servng*, ?side board, 67
- Boys*, physician allowed 3, 15
- Almoner's boy, 16
- Herberger of cart horses, 41
- Ordinance concerning, 51
- Ferretter's boy, 45
- Partringer's, 45
- 2 Otter hunter's boys, 45
- Avenery clerk's, 38
- Chief clerk of Marshalsy's, 39
- Stud-groom's, 44
- King's kitchen valets', 32
- Household kitchen valets', 33
- Confessor to have 3, 14
- Aker's, 33
- Warden of palfrey's, 40
- braces*, armefulles, 42, margin
- Bread*, 61; paneter to receive in grosse, and answer for expenses to chief clerk, 24
- Liverce of, to be made in pantry, 23
- Round, for all, 25
- Pain de main, 25
- Pantry clerk to be at receipt of, 23
- Bread*, allowances of:
- 24 squires, each 1 darre
- Pantry clerk, 1 darre
- Under clerk, 1 darre
- Chief paneter, 1 darre
- 2 valets pantry, each 1 darre
- Serjant paneter, 1 darre
- Serjant paneter's valet, 1 darre
- Valet purveyor of bread, 1 darre
- (*Bread* continu'd)
- Waferer, 1 darre
- Baker, 1 darre
- Naper, 1 darre
- Valet naper, 1 darre
- Ewer, 1 darre
- Valet ewer, 1 darre
- Laundry (washerman), 2 darres
- Laundry of naperie, 2 darres
- Chief butler, 1 darre
- Serjant butler, household, 1 darre
- Serjant butler (king), 1 darre
- Valet of cuphouse, 1 darre
- Valet wine-drawer, 1 darre
- Valet verser, 1 darre
- 2 valets of pitcher house, each 1 darre
- 2 clerks of kitchen, each 1 darre
- Huntsman, 1 darre
- 2 achators, each 1 darre
- 2 serjant cooks, each 1 darre
- 5 kitchen valets (king's kitchen), each 1 darre
- 5 household kitchen valets, each 1 darre
- 2 valets akers, each 1 darre
- 1 Lardner, 1 darre
- Treasurer's chamberlain, 1 darre
- Steward's chamberlain, 1 darre
- Chamberlain's chamberlain, 1 darre
- Controller's chamberlain, 1 darre
- Cofferer's chamberlain, 1 darre
- Counting table clerks, i.e. serjant's liverce, 1 darre
- Clerk privy seal's chamberlain, 1 darre
- Clerks of privy seal, 1 darre
- Purveyor's chamberlain, 1 darre
- Purveyor, 2 darres
- Spicery clerk, 1 darre
- Under spicery clerk, 1 darre
- Under usher of wardrobe, 1 darre
- Fruiterer, 7 darres
- Chandler, 1 darre
- 2 valets to work wax, each 1 darre
- Confessor, 3 darres
- Larder usher, 1 darre
- Poulterer, 1 darre
- Valet poulterer, 1 darre
- Garbager, 1 darre
- Valet garbager, 1 darre
- 2 serjants of scullery, each 1 darre
- 2 valets scullery, each 1 darre
- 2 valets sausery, each 1 darre

(Bread continu'd)

- Porter, 1 darre
 Valets' porters, each 1 darre
 Chief Marshalsy clerk, 1 darre
 Avenery clerk, 1 darre
 Warden of palfreys, 1 darre
 Serjant herberger of horses, 1 darre
 Serjant marshal for horses, when sick, 1 darre
 2 valets to Hall ushers, each 1 darre
 2 knights Hall marshals, each 2 darres
 2 serjants Hall marshals, each 1 darre
 Surveyor of dresser, 1 darre
 3 assayers, each 1 darre
 Dean of chapel, 2 darres
 Almoner, 2 darres
 Almoner's office, 13 darres
 Under almoner, 1 darre
 Valet of almony, 1 darre
 Physiciau, 3 darres
 Surgeon, 2 darres
 Market coroner, 1 darre
 3 esquires for king's mouth, each 1 darre
 12 squires of king's chamber, each 1 darre
 2 ushers of king's chamber, each 1 darre
 8 valets, 1 darre
 Knight chief usher's chamberlain, 1 darre
 Under ushers of hall, each 1 darre
 Squires of household when sick, 2 loves (Edw. IV), 68, 69
 4 squires for the body, a chet love (Edw. IV), 64, 65
 Yeomen of chamber when sick, 2 loves (Edw. IV), 66
- Breef* = *brief* or *abstract*,
 Of parcels delivered and spent in spicery, to be made every day, 10
- Breking of houses*, 56
- Bribours a Nuit*, 55
- Briefs*, 24
 Butler to answer at, daily to clerk of buttery, 28
 Serjant of scullery to answer to clerk of kitchen at, for fuel, etc., 36
 Garbager to answer daily at,

- Of kitchen to be made by clerk every day at count in wardrobe, 30
- Buckhounds*, king's, 44
 Huntsman to keep, 15, 45
- busch*, fuel, margin 36
- Butchery*, 34
- Butler*, chief, 27, 47
 To view his office, 58
 Loss on bad wine to fall on, 61
- Butlery*, 27
 To be surveyed by controller, 7
- Butlery and pantry*, clerks of, 23
- Buttery*, 51
 Liverces of wine and beer to be made in, 23
- Buyinges*, 47, 67
- By colour of*, 49
- By delivere of*, 42
- Candles*. See *Lights*.
- Cundlemas*, 59, February 2
- Canvas*, 10
- Carnaver*, valet, 42. *Carnauer* (if the reading is correct) may be a derivative from some word which must have been derived from *caro*, *carnis* (flesh), or perhaps it may be connected with *caro*, *carra*, *carrum* (a cart). Both meanings would not be unsuitable here.—J. H. Hessels.
- Carriage of victuals*, etc., 52
- Carriages and Portages*, in king's journeys, to be levied in rolle of spicery clerk, 10
- Carriages* (wardrobe), both for coffers, etc., and for beds, to be surveyed by spicery clerk, 10
- Cart*, butler's, 29
- Cart horses*, 40
- Carts*, 40
- Cellars*, 30
 To be surveyed by controller, 7
- Cerges*, 15. Fr. "*cierge* : m. A

- big wax candle. *Poincte* . . . the middle-sized wax-candle used in Churches (the biggest being termed *Cierge*, and the least *Bougié*)."—Cotgrave.
- Chamber*, stewards of household's, 6
- Thresorer of wardrobe, 6
- Chamberlaine's, 6
- Controller's, 7
- Cofferer's, 8
- Clerk privy seal, 9
- 3 clerks do., 9
- Clerk purveyor for wardrobe's, 9
- Clerk of spicery's, 10
- Confessor's, 14
- Almoner's, 15
- Physician's, 16
- Surgeon's, 16
- Market coroner's, 17
- Squires', of king's mouth, 18
- Knight chief usher's, 20
- Hall marshals', 22
- Great lord's, 52
- Squires for king's body (Edw. IV), 64, 65
- Chamberlayne*, 6
- Hugh de Dispenser, 5
- Commands valets of king's chamber, 19
- Steward's, 6
- Treasurer's, 6
- Controller's, 8
- Cofferer's, 8
- Warden of privy seal's, 9
- Purveyor of wardrobe's, 9
- To keep his master's bed
- Knight chief usher of Hall's, 20
- Great lord's, 52
- Chandler*, serjant, 13
- Chapel*, allowances for, 15
- Chapeux*, hats; Fr. *chapeaux*, 46
- Chaplein*, 62
- Chappeler*, 46, note
- Treasurer of the wardrobe's, 6
- Chappleins* 5, 15
- Chareters*, charioteers, drivers, 43
- Charetes*, 42, note
- Chariters*, cart horses, 44
- Chaucerer* = chaussure, shoeing, 25, note
- Chaundlery*, 51
- Cheeto*, a *chet* loaf, lofe, 64, 65.
- Fr. "*Pain rousset*. Cheat, or bouted bread; household bread made of Wheat and Rie mingled."—Cot. "The second is the *cheat* or wheaton bread, so named because the colour ther of resembleth the graic or yellowish wheat, being cleane and well dressed; and out of this is the courset of the bran (vsuallie called *gurgeons* or *pollard*) taken." Harrison calls the mixt-corn bread by its usual name of "*miscelin*, that is, bread made of mingled *corne*."—Harrison's England, p. 155.
- Cherries* provided by fruiterer, 13
- Chief usher*, to see that food is good, 7
- Chivage*, 62. Low Latin *Chivagium*, *Chavagium*. "Capitis census; cens dû au seigneur tous les ans par chaque tête de ses hommes de corps: ol. *chavaige*."—D'Arnis.
- Christien Scot*, 55
- Cities*, not to be charged by market coroner for more than a night and day, 17
- Clark*, or clerk, for the pleas belonging to stewardship, 6
- Under almoner, 15
- Clerk*, of avenery, 39
- Of briefs, 24
- Controller's, 7
- Clarks*, counting table, 8
- Dean of chapel's, 6, 15
- Clerks* of kitchen, 30, 31
- Clark of kitchen* to see that food is good, 7
- To view great beasts. See note, 60
- Clerk* of buttery to taste wines, 47
- Clark*, chief, of pantry and buttery, 23

- Clerk*, chief, of Marshalsy, 38
 Of Marshalsea, 38, 60
 Of the march, 61
 Of the averny (Marshalsy), 61
 Purveyor of wardrobe, to charge king's taylor, armourer, etc., by indentures, 11; to view his office, 58
 Of privy seal, 9. See *Privy Seal*.
- Clerks*, of the office, when they are to account, 59
 Spicery, 10
- Clerk of Spicery* to survey fruit provided by fruiterer. Its cost and cost of carriage, 13
 Provides cloths and towels, 14
 Assistant spicery, 12
- Cloths* allowed to confessor's boys, 14
- Coal*, to be purveyed by serjant of scullery, 36
- Coch*, 'for their coch,' 8 and note, allowance for the night; Fr. *couche*, bed.
- Cochours*, Setters, dogs that *lie down* when they scent the game, 45
- Cofferer*, 8
 To be superseded, 59
- Confectioner of Spices*, charge for, 11
- Confections* provided by clerk of spicery, 13
- Confessor*, king's, 14
- Contreroller*, 7
 To be at cutting up of beasts, 60
 To taste wines, 47, 61
- Controller*, or *Countreroller*, of wardrobe, Sir Gilbert de Wiggeton, 5
- Controller*, *Comptroller of Customs*, oath of, 72
- Cooks*, 31
- Coroner*. See *Market Coroner*.
 Marshalsy to be charged with, for king, 55
- Couched*, v. laid down—transitive: applied to wines; Fr. *s. v. coucher*, 61, 47
- Council*, ordinance of, concerning Marshalsy, 57
- Council*, king's, 48
- Count* of the house, account of household, 23
- Counter-roll*, of things issuing from wardrobe to be kept by controller, 7
- Counting Table*, 8
 Clarks of, 8
- Coursers*, 40
- Courses*, number of, 52
- Court*, wherein king lieth, 52
- Covenabli*, Fr. *convenablement*, 44
- Cresset*, 40
- Crosse*, offering at, 62
 Of resurrection, 62
- Cup*, squire to serve king with, 18
- Cuppes*, silver, butler to be answerable for, 28
- Darre* = dole, Cotgrave, 6 and note.
- Davon*, ? Fr. *devant*, used instead of the proper word *devoir* (see *devoir* in Cotgrave), 62. In Irish, Mr Hennessy says that the word is *da* (two) *bhon* (groat or penny), pronounc *davoun*, 8 pence, by transition an offering, in which sense he has often met with the word in Irish. But how it got into these Ordinances is the difficulty.
- Dean of Chappel*, 14, 15
- Deer*, huntsman for, 44
- Dereigned*, 53. Fr. "*Desrener*. To dereine; to iustifie, or make good, the deuyall of an act or fact. Norm."—Cot.
- Destriers*, destriers, 40. Fr. "*Destrier*: m. A steed, a great horse; or horse of seruice."—Cot.
- Devised*, settled, 50

- Dimidium*, half, 64, 65
- Dinners*, steward's chamberlayne allowed, when he will have them, 6
With king, chamberlayne, if banneret, allowed, 7
- Dispenser*, *Hugh le*, chamberlayne, commanded to prepare ordinances, 5
- Dogs*, 44, 45, 52
- Dresser*, surveyor of, 22
Larderer to keep viandes at, 33
- Earl Marshal*, 35
- Easter*, 62
Knight chief usher of Hall's fee payable at, and Michaelmas, 20
- Easter Even*, fuel for dinner-time allowed from All Saints to, 6
- Eggs*, waferer to have, 25
- Electuaries*, provided by clerk of spicery, 13
- Elnes* (tells), 17
- Ely*, Bishop of, ordinances read and assented to in presence of, 5
- Embesil*, embezzle, 51
- Epiphany*, 62
- Esquier*, knight chief usher's, 20
- Esquillerye*, scullery, 36
- Ewer*, 27; officer for water-vessels, *l. aquarius*, to help larder porters, 34
King's kitchen, 33
- Excester*, Exeter, Bishop of, 58
- Exchequer*, counter-roll to be testified in, 7
Accounts of wardrobe to be delivered to, 59
- Expence*, 35
- Fairs*, 60
- Faucons*, falcons, 45
- Feasts*, New Year's Tide and Whitsuntide, 6
- Fees*: of steward, 6
Payable at New Year's Tide and Whitsunday in equal portions, 6
Garbagers, 1 mark a-year, 36
Butler, xx marks a-year, 27
Knights Marshals of Hall, 10 marks, 22
Knight's purveyor for wardrobe to have his, out of the Court, 10
Chief usher of Hall's, x marks a-year, 20
For presents, 53
- Feriall dayes*, 70, festival or feast days. Fr. "*Ferial* . . . Of, or belonging to, a holyday."—Cotgrave.
- Ferretter*, 45
- Ferrettes*, ferrets, 45
- Ferrors*, 42, ? blacksmiths, shoers of horses
- Ferrurie*, 41
- Feust*, Fr. "*Fust* : m. Any staffe, stake, stocke, stumpe, trunke or log."—Cot. ; wood, 36, margin
- Feust*, cups of, 28
- Figs*, provided by clerk of spicery, 13
- Fines*, for neglect of duty, 50
- Fines* levied by Market Coroner to be paid to wardrobe, 17
- Fish*, parting of, 7, 31
- Fish*, great, 60, 61
- Fisher*, 46
- Flesh*, cutting out of, 7
Achates of, 31
- Florence*, 62
- Flour*, sauser to purvey, 37
- Foilles* of tallies, 23, 42
To be delivered to chiefs within xij days after achate, 31
- Footeman* under Earl Marshal, 57
- Fore-goer*, 53
- For-jured the Court*, 53
- Fornage*, baking, 26 and note
- Forren accountes*, 60

Forrein charges, 47
Forrein ministers to account in wardrobe, 59
Fore-riders, ? postillions, 43
Forewatchid, tired out with watching, 65
Forwith, 25
Foule, fowls, chickens, 36
Fruiterer, 13
Fuel: Under ushers to make liverces of, 21
 To be purveyed by serjant of scultery, 36
Fuer, 21 and note, the strewer of rushes in the hall

Garbager, ? looker after the refuse and offal, 36
Garden of the wardrobe: To pay for household purveyances with his own hand or by warrant of his letters, 58
 To fix time for the accounts, 59
Garner Chief of Marshalsy, 42
Gaytes, Herberger for the 2, 55
Giftes, king's, from wardrobe to be showed to treasurer of, 4 times a-year, 11
Gilbert de Wiggeton, 5
Godes, gen. in es., 51
Graihoundes, 44
Great Friday, 62, Good Friday, Crucifixion day
Great Meal, king's, 32
Great Roll of houshold expenses, 15
Gunnore, Dame, 55. (This was Queen Guinevere's name in some old Romances.)

Hackney, 15
 Serjants at arms to have one—somter, 19
 Hakeney, the, of the house, 43

Hackneyman, 43
Hall, 20
 Chief usher to see that none dine in, but those entitled, 20
 Order concerning those who should eat in, 50
 People to be placed in, by knights marshals, 21
 Serjants marshals to appoint places in, 23
 Clerks of pantry and buttery to serve in, at both meals, 23, 24
 Pantry porters to carry bread at alternate meals in, 24
 Pantry valet to serve at one meal in, 24
 Valet ewer to serve in, 27
 26 serjants at arms to lie in, 20
Hall Marshals, 21
Hall, diet in, allowed to *Steward of Household*, if banneret, for 1 knight, 3 esquiers, and a clark; if knight, for 2 esquiers and a clarke, 6
Thresorer of Wardrobe, for 1 chaplein, 1 clarke, and 2 esquiers, 6
Chamberlayne, if banneret, for 1 knight and 2 squires, 6; if knight, for 2 esquiers, 7
Contreroller, for a clark and an esquier, 7
Cofferer, for one esquier, 8
Clark of Privy Seal, for 1 esquier, 9
Clark Purveior of Great Wardrobe, for 1 esquier, 9
Chief Chaplin or Dean of Chappel, for 1 squier, 14
Almoner or Almner, for 1 squier, 15
Under Almoner or Clark to Almoner, 15
Vallet of Almonery, 16
Valletes of Misterie, 16
Cyruigion, 16
Knight Marshal, for himself, clark, and sergeaunt, 20
Knight Chief Usher of Hall, for 1 esquier, 20
Fuer, among the vallets de mestier, 21
Purveyor of Bread, a vallet de mestier, 25

- (Hall continu'd)
- 2 *Buttery Porters*, vallets de mestiers, 30
- Clarkes of Kitchen*, two, one chief, the other under, to take one meal a day each, 30, 31
- 2 *Serjant Cooks*, who shall serve at one meal and eat at the other, 32
- Vallet Garbager*, 36
- 2 *Vallets de Mestiers of the Scullery*, 37
- 2 *Vallets de Mestiers of the Sausery*, 37
- Warden of Palfreys* (serjant herberjour), 40
- Serjant Herberjour of Cart Horses*, 40
- Serjant Marshal* (horse doctor), 41
- Otterhunter*, among the vallets de mestiers, 45
- Birde-taker or Oyselour*, among the vallets de mestier, 45
- Fisher*, among the vallets de mestier, 46
- Two Trumpeters and two other minstrels*, diet in chamber or Hall, 46
- 12 *Messengers*, 46
- Chappeler* (? hatmaker), to eat by himself, 46
- Harbergers*. See *Herbergers*, 48
- Harbinger*, 1 Knight Marshal of Hall to be, 21
- 1 Serjant Marshal of Hall to be, 22
- Harde*, heard, 50
- Harneys*, 40
- Hurneys cartes*, 39
- Harnis*, 12; gear furniture. "O. Fr. harneis; Fr. harnois, all manner of harness, equipage furniture; Ger. Harnisch, armour."—Morris, Glossary to Chaucer.
- Herberged*, to be, 42
- Herbergeour*, valet, 40
- Herberjour*, herbergers, warden of palfreys, 39
- Herbergers*, not to refused lodgings, etc., 49
- Herbergers*, or foregoers for different offices, 54, 55
- Herbergerye*, poultry out of, 34
- Heringe*, herrings, 60
- Hideous complayntes*, 56
- Holle*, whole, 24. Same as Chaucer's Hool, Hoole, Prologue, l. 533, Squires Tale, 161. "A.S. hál, whole, sound."—Morris.
- Homicides*, 56
- Horse Doctor*, 41
- Horses*: Avenery Clerk 1, 39
- Chief Clerk of Marshals 2, 39
- Ordinances respecting allowances for, to Serjants at Arms, 19
- Confessor allowed for 3, 14
- Serjants at Arms, each 2, 19
- Physician allowed for 3, 16
- Under Almoner for 1, 16
- Serjant Marshal (horse-doctor) 2, 41
- Warden of Palfreys 2, 40
- Stud-groom, guardian of young horses, 2, 44
- Squires for king's body allowed (Edw. IV), 64, 65
- No Valet de Mestier to have, 51
- Hospitals*, 53
- Houche*, cloths, 40 and note
- Household*, the great, 53
- Household*, uncertainty concerning duties and privileges of officers of, 5
- King gives orders for reform of, 5
- Ordinances, who prepared and assented to, 5
- Ordinance respecting those of, who are sick, 53
- Household officers* to be lodged near Court, 48
- Names of, to be delivered to Warden and Clark of Marshalsea, 60
- Houserome*, houserom, 42
- Houses*, trappings, horse-clothes, 43
- Hugh le Despenser*, 5
- Hugo Bungey*, 55
- Hunsmen*, huntsmen, 44

- Incense*, 62
- Indentures*, taylor, armourer, pavillioner, confectioner of spices to be charged by, by purveyor, 11
- Indenture of wines*, 3 parts, 47
- Infantes de gard*, 18
- Infants* (king's wards), 17, 18
- Jewelhouse*, fee of, 65
- John Hauberjour*, 55
- John Lovel*, 44
- Keu*, 14, a cook to dress the Confessor's victual. Fr. *Queu, Queux*: m. A Cooke.—Cot.
- King*, Warden of Palfreys to ride with, etc., 40
Ordinances concerning his courses at meat, etc., 52
To be preceded by Serjants at Arms when on progress, 19
- King's Chamber*, Squires and Ushers of, 18
Valets of, 19
4 Serjants at Arms to lie near, 20
- Kitchen*, 30—33
- Knight of Household*, 52
2 Marshals of Hall, 21
- Knight Marshal*, 20
- Knights*, lodging and following, 48
All knights admitted to household, 50
Chief Usher of Hall, 20
- Knightes Service*, 65
- Knownen*, past participle in *-en*, 61
- Larder*, 33, 51
To be surveyed by Controller, 7
- Lardner*, 33
- Launder*, for King's Chamber, 27
of Napery, 27
- Lent*, huntsman to keep dogs at his own cost during, 45
- Lieutenantes*, Steward's and Treasurer's, 32
- Lights*: *Candles* allowed to Steward of Household, 12; p. 6
Thresorer of Wardrobe, 12; 6
Chamberlayne, 12; 6
Contreroller, 6; 7
Cofferer, chamber, 6; counting table, 12 or more; p. 8
2 Clarkes of Counting Table and Contrerollers Clark, 6; 8
Clerk of Privy Seal, 6; 9
3 Clerkes of Privy Seal, 6; 9
Clerk Purveyor for Wardrobe, 3; 9
Clerk of Spicery (chamber), 2; (office), 3; 10
Under-Usher of Wardrobe, 3; 12
Fruiterer (chamber), 3; (office), 3; 13
Chandler, 3; 13
King's Confessor, 3; 14
Dean of Chapel, with 5 chaplains, 6 clarks, 6; 14
Chapel, 6; 15
Almoner, 2; 15
Physician, 3; 16
Surgeon, 3; 16
Clerk Market Coroner, 2; 17
3 Squires of king's mouth, each 2 = 6; 18
Usher of king's chamber, 3; 18
4 Serjants at Arms, 2; 20
26 ————— 6; 20
Knight Chief Usher of Hall, 3; 20
2 Serjant Ushers do., each 3 = 6; 20
2 Knights Marshal, each 3 = 6; 22
2 Serjants Marshal, each 3 = 6; 22
Surveyor of dresser, 3; 22
3 Assayers, each 2 = 6; 22
Clark of pantry and buttery, 2; 23
Chief Paneter, 3; office, 3; 24
Serjeant Paneter, 3; (office), 6; 24
Baker Serjeant, 3; (office), 2; 25
Naper Serjeant (office), 2; 26
Eawer (office), 2; 27
Launder for king's chamber, 2; 27
Lawender of Naperie, 2; 27
Botiller, chief, 3; 27
Botiller Serjeant, Household, 3 (office), 6; (cellar), 4; 28
Bottiller Serjeant, King's, 3; (office), 3; 28
Pitcher, House, 2 valets (office), 2; 29
Clark of Kitchin, Chief, 2; 30

(Lights continu'd)

- Achatours, 2, each 3 = 6; 31
 Cooks, Serjant, to king, each 3=6; 32
 Cooks, Serjant, for meisme, each 3 = 6; 32
 Lardiner Serjant, 3; (office), 3; 34
 Garbager (office), 2; 36
 Scullery Sarjeaunt, 3; (office), 2; 36
 Scullery Sarjant (office), 2; 36
 Sauser, 3; (office), 3; 36
 Porter Serjant, 3; (office), 3; 38
 Marshalsy Clark, 2; 39
Warden of Palfreys, 3; 40
 Squires for king's body, 1 candle wax, 2 candles Paris (Edw. IV), 64, 65
 40 squires of household, 2 candles parice (Edw. IV), 68, 69
Cerges (for chapel), 15
Cresset, 40
Torches, 6
 Allowed to Steward of Household, 6
 Treasurer of Wardrobe, 6
 Chamberlain, 6
 Contreroller, 7
 Cofferer, 6
Clark Privy Seal, 9
Tortis, great candle of wax—Cot.; 6 and note
 Allowed to Steward of Household, 3; 6
 Treasurer, 3; 6
 Chamberlain, 2; 6
 Contrerollour, 2; 7
 2 Clarks of Counting Table, 2; 8
 Cofferer, 2; 6
 Clarke Privy Seal, 2; 9
 3 Clarkes Privy Seale, 2; 9
 Clarke purveyor for Wardrobe, 1; 9
 Spicery clarke, 1; 10
 Confessor, 1; 14
 Chaplains, 1; 14
 Almoner, 1; 15
 Physician, 1; 16
 Surgeon, 1; 16
 Market Coroner, 1; 17
 3 Esquires for king's mouth, each 1; 18
 36 Sergeaunts at Arms, 20; 20
 Chief Usher of Hall, 1; 20
 2 Knights Marshal of Hall, 2; 22

(Lights continu'd)

- Pantry clerk, 1; 23
 Butler, 1; 27
 Chief Clerk of Kitchen, 1; 30
 Marshalsy clerk, 1; 39
Linnen cloth, 10
Lisse of Hall, ? 20; *Lusse of Hall*, 21. *Lisse*, ? peace, quiet, A.Sax. *liss, liðs*, tranquility (Stratmann); E.E. *lylthe* styll and softe.—Promptorium. *Lisse, lusse*, ? list, Fr. *Liste*: f. A list, roll, check-roll, catalogue of names, &c.
Litter, ? straw or rushes for bedding, 'litter all the year,' allowed to the chief officers, steward, etc. The Confessor and his companion to have liter for their beds all the year, 14
 Under Ushers of Hall to make liveries of, 21
Little Weldon, 44
Livelihood, sick officers to have, according to their estates, 53
Liverye, Liverie, etc., 6 et passim; = allowance, rations; things delivered, *lirré*
 Time for, of bread, wine, and beer, 23
 Place for, 23, 53
 No Knight of Household not holding office to take, 52
Lodging, 48
London, 60
Malice, to do, 44
Manger, livery to be allowed to Counting-Table Clerks for, 8, breakfast and supper
Marcealles, actes, 70, martial. Romance adjectives took the plural ending after plural nouns; 'wateres principales,' &c.
March, Marcham, clerk of the, 61. *March*; *marcham*; *mercham* (if the readings are correct) would (according to their formation) be = *marcatum, mercatum, mercadum*, a market. Or perhaps

- the word stands for marshals; but how, in such a case, to account for the m?—J. H. Hessels. "*Marchand*: m. *ande*: f. Of, or belonging to, a Marchant, or Market. *Place marchande*, The market place, or place of ordinarie bargaining, and payments . . . *Poids marchand*, The weight vsed by Marchants and Tradesmen." . . —Cotgrave.
- Margarette Lovel*, 44
- Mark*, gold coin worth (?) 13s. 4d.
Steward of Household's fee, xx, 6
- Market Coroner*, 16
- Marshal*, Knight, or Earl, 20
- Marshal*, Mareshal, money rising from pleas in Hall to be delivered before, 17
- Marshals of Hall*, 21
Duties of, 50
To taste wines, 47
- Marshals*, to search for strangers, 55
Names of foregoers to be delivered to, 53
- Marshalsy*, 38, 51
Officers of, 55, 57, 61
- Martlemas*, 58
- Master of the Wardrobe*, Gardein, 61
- Meane seson*, meantime, 60
- Medicine*, offering for, 62
- Meisné*, household, 32. "O.Fr. *Maisne*, *mesnee*, *meignee*, a household. Said to be from Low Lat. *Maisnada* (from Lat. *minus natu*), a company of *menials*."—Skeat.
- Mene*, a convenient, 60
- Mercham*, 61. See *Marcham*, 61
- Merchants wine*, 47
- Messagers*, 51
- Messe de Grosse*, 6 and note. *Messe de grosse* from the kitchen is allowed to various officers of household.
- Messe of Rost* to be allowed to various officers. See 8 et supra.
- Messengers*, 12; 46
- Messes*: to be examined, 52
In Hall to be set by assayers, 22
To be counted by serjants under ushers, 21
In King's Chamber to be counted daily, 18
- Michaelmas*, Knight Chief Usher of Hall's fee payable at, and Easter, 20
- Midle beste*, beast of medium quality, 60
- Ministers*, penalty to, for not coming to the account, 59
- Minstrels*, 46
- Monday*, Controllor visits offices, 7
- Money*, always to be sufficient in wardrobe, 58
- Morters*, 10. Fr. "*mortier*, a kind of small chamber-lamp."—Cotgrave. *Mortar* is still in use for a dumpty thick candle to stand in a saucer
- Myrrh*, 62
- Nail*, pay upon the, 35
- Naper*, care-taker of household linen, 26
- Naperie*, 10, 51
To be delivered by Clerk Purveyor of Wardrobe to Chief Usher of Wardrobe, 10
To be received from Clerk of Spicery, 26
- New Year's tide*, 62
Half-yearly fee payable at, 6
- Northampton*, county of, 44
- Northburghe*, Sir Roger de, Thresorer, commanded to prepare ordinances, 5
- Oath* of Controllor of Customs, 72
- Ob*, a half-penny, 8 et passim

- Offerings*, 62
- Offices*, no strangers to be in, 51
To be surveyed by Controller, 7
To be visited daily by Chief Usher of Hall, 20
- Officers*, to account daily, 50
Answerable to Steward and Treasurer, 50
Penalties for neglect of duty, 50
- Old clothes*, 26
- Otterhunt*, otter hunter, 45
- Outrages* to be amended, 52
- Oyselour*, bird-taker, 45
- Pages*, 51
- Pain de main*, fine bread, 25
- Pain*, penalty, 51
- Palfreis*, king's, 39, 40
- Palfreours*, 22
- Paneters*, 24
- Pantry*, to be surveyed by Controller, 7
Liveries of bread to be made in, 23
- Pantry*, king's, 24
Clarks of, 23
Valets and porters of, 24
- Pantry clerk*, to answer for dog's liverye at account, 52
- Parcels*, specified quantities, as required, 33
- parich*, Paris, 64, 65. A candle called a Paris candle. See *Babees Book Index*.
- Parliament* or great feast, 60, 61
- Partringer*, the partridge keeper, 45
- Patient*, esquires for the body, 4; of the noble *patient* condicion, 64. Fr. "*Patient*, Patient; suffering, induring, bearing, abiding; meeke, mild, quiet; obedient . . . *Au patient demeurent les terres* : Prov. The iust shall inherit the land (sayes the Psalmist)."—Cotgrave.
- Pavillioner*, king's, charges for, 11
- Payments* to be made in wardrobe, 60
- Pears*, provided by fruiterer, 13
- Peeces* of wines, 47, casks : see *Tonel*, p. 89, col. 2, at foot.
- Penalties* : for following the Court without license, 56, 57
For delaying the account, 58
For not coming to the account when summoned, 59
For being in arrears at the account in the wardrobe, 59
For those who take fees for king's presents, 53
- Peny*, a great, to be offered by king, 62
- People* : purveyance of wheat to be made for people's least grievance, 25
- Percher* wax, 64, 65. A large wax candle, probably stuck on a perch. See *Babees Book Index*.
- Petit ewe*, garbager's fee, 36
- Physician*, 15
- Pitcher house*, 29
- Pleas of Hall*, 17
- Pleas*, belonging to clark for stewardship, 6
- Poor*, money for, 62
- Porters*, two Butlery, 30
Of Wardrobe, 12
Serjant, to keep gate, 38
Valets of pantry, 24
- Potage*, ? soups, stews, or department of pots, 36
- Potager*, King's kitchen, 32
- Poultry office*, Waferer to have eggs in, 25
- Presents*, taking, 53
No valet or other officer to give anything away without leave, 52
- Prisage* wines, 47. "*Prisagium*.—Anglis *prisage*, jus *prisas* capiendi, vel ipse actus. *Prisæ*.—Quidquid ex subditis et tenen-

- tibus capitur ad expensas regis et domini, quod legitime et debite persolvi debet; prélèvements opérés sur les sujets ou les vassaux pour faire face aux dépenses du roi ou du seigneur; ol. *pris, prise.* (Pass.) *Prisa.*—Jus quodvis, exactio, jus capiendi ex subditis ea quæ domino necessaria sunt . . . droit de prendre pour son usage des vivres et des utensiles.”—D’Arnis.
- Privy Seal*, Clerks of, to have chamber allowance together, 9
- Pullaine*, pullein, poultry Gargager to receive, 36
Price to be set by valet de mestier, 35
- Pulleter*, 35
- Pulletrye*, 35
Poultry office, 60
- Purification*, feast of, 62
- Purveyances*, made by purveyor of the avenery, 38, 39
Great, 60
- Purveyor*: of auenerye, 39
Of fuel, 18
Of fuel for Hall, 20
Of wardrobe: his allowance, etc., 9; his charge, 11, 12
Of wines, 48
- Purveyors*, things sent in by, to be surveyed by Chief Usher of Hall, 20
To be answerable for bad bargains, 60
- Puture*, 44, 45. Low-Latin *putura*, everything that serves as food for man or animal: see D’Arnis.
- Queen*, 52
- Races*, breeds, 43 and note
- Raisins*, provided by Clerk of Spicery, 13
- Raskals* to be removed from office, 60
- Rebailed*, rodelivered, 48
- Relikes*, remains of victuals, 46, 47
- Relikes*, money to be offered to, 62
- Rent*, “Till the king have given him C. marks,” land of that yearly value, 10
- Robe*, loss of, a penalty, 50
- Roberies*, 56
- Robert Gynour*, 55
- Robes* allowed to all officers of household, except fruiterer, 6, 46. See *Allowances*.
- Robes*, king’s, 38
- Roger de Belers*, 58
- Roll* to be kept by avenery clerk, 39
- Roll* of Buttery, 28
Purveyor of ales’ wages in, 29
Butlery porters’ wages in, 30
- Roll* of the Kitchen, valet’s wages in, 19
Hall valets de mestiers’ allowances in, 21
Wages of poulter valet in, 36
Larder porter’s wages in, 34
- Roll*, Clerk of the Mercham’s (Marshalsy), 61
- Roll*, Marshalsy, 39
Warder of palfrey’s wages in, 40
Coroner’s, of Marshalsy, 56
Allowance of herberger of cart-horses in, 41
- Roll*, Pantry, 25
Allowance to baker in, 26
- Rushes*, 64, 65
- Sakes*, sacks, 42
- Sausery*, 37, 51
- Scantelinges* of the tonnes, 47
- Scrope*, Henry de, Justice, ordinances read and assented to in presence of, 5
- Scullery*, 36, 51
Waferer to have fuel in, 25

- Selling* forbidden to officers of household, 49
- Serjant* of household, liverie of, 8
- Serjants at Armes*, 19
Four to attend on ushers, etc., 20
- Serjant*: Baker, 25
Butler of Household, 28; of King, 28
Cokes, two for king's mouth, 31
Two for Meisne (household), 32
Garbager, 36
Herbergeour of sommers and cart-horses, 40
Herberjour Warden of palfreys, 39, 40
Lardner, 33
Marshals of Hall, 21, 22
Marshal Guardian of young horses, 43, 44
Marshal (horse-doctor), 41
Chief Paneter, 24
Porter to keep gate, 38
Pulleter, 35
Purveyor of wine, Chief Butler, 27
Sauser, 37
Of Scullery, 36; to receive silver vessels, 37
Under Ushers of Hall, 20
Valets must eat in Hall, 51
- Serjants* to be at account, 52
- Servants*—
2 yeomen of chamber to have 1 (Edw. IV), 66, 67
Squires of household each to have 1 (Edw. IV), 68, 69
Squires for body allowed 2 (Edw. IV), 64, 65
- Service of the dead*, 62
- Sextier*, measure of wine, 6 and note
- Sheriff* of Shire to overlook studgroom, 44
- Sheriffs* to assist marshals, 55
- Shoes*: all valets de mestiers iiij s. viij d. yearly, 25 et supra
Allowance for, to valets of king's chamber, 19
Fore-riders, iiij s. viij d.; someters, iiij s. viij d., 43
Wardrobe porter allowed equal portions at New Year and Whitsuntide, 13
Loss of allowance for, a punishment, 50
- Sickness*, liverie during, 52
Rules for charretters, etc., in, 53
- Simon the Ewer*, wife of, 55
- Sojorne*, time of king's residence, the, 44
- Someters*, keepers of sumpter horses, 43
- Sommers*, 40 and note
Number of, 43
- Somters*, sumpter-horses, someters, 52
- Sort*, manner, 49
- Sovereigns*, superintendents, upper officers of the household, faults in weight of bread, etc., to be shewn to, by pantry clerk, 23
- Spicerie* or spicery, 10. Fr. "*Espicerie*: f. A Spicerie; also, Spices. *Espicier*: m. A Grocer, a seller of Spices, a Drug-seller."—Cotgrave.
- Spicery*: to be surveyed by controller, 7
Clerk of, Chief Usher of Wardrobe, his duties and allowances, 10
To give out Napery, 26
- Spigurnel*, Henry, Justice, ordinances read and assented to in presence of, 5
- Squire*, not allowed to Knight unless his state require it, 50
To carve for king, 18
- Squires*, 3 Assayers, 22
24 Hall, 23
Of king's mouth, 18
Of king's chamber, 18
4 for the body (Edw. IV), 64, 65
Of household, 40 (Edw. IV), 66—70
Their customs of meeting for talking and singing, etc., 70
To wear the king's livery customably, 68, 69
Rules respecting leave of absence, 70

- Yearly allowance to, and cost (Edw. IV), 70, 71
- St Andrewe-tide*, 59
- St Hilary*, 58, his day, Jan. 12
- St John Baptist's Day*, 58, his day, June 26
- St John the Evangelist*, 62
- St Nicholas*, 56
- St Thomas of Canterbury*, 62, his day, Dec. 21
- Standard* of measures, 42
- Statutes of the Household* concerning the account, 58
- Steward* of Houshold, B. de Badelesmere, 5
- Steward*: accounts daily, 7
- Ordinance concerning, 5, 6
- To be at account, 52
- Penalty incurred by, for delaying the account, 58
- To give orders concerning dog's liverce, 52
- To charge baker to make purveyance of wheat, 25
- To regulate expenses, etc. of king's wards, 17
- Money rising from pleas in Hall to be delivered before, 17
- May give orders to Serjants at Armes, 19
- To command Hall Squires, 23
- Persons arrested by porter to be carried before, 38
- To punish defaulters, 50
- Controller*, Market Coroner to be the, for pleas of Hall, 17
- Stews*, to be made by potager, 32
- Strangers*: to be honorably entertained in Hall, 20
- Not to eat in offices, 51
- Following Court to be punished, 55
- Stretes*, estreats, fines, 17
- Stud-groom*, 43, 44
- Subjects*, Rules for preventing violence and distress to, when the Court is travelling, 48, 49
- Sufficiency*, 5; Steward shall be a man of good sufficiency, ? a man of good property, or, as we should say, of substance. "Warden of Privy Seal must be a man of sufficiency for that purpose," 9. Cf. Chaucer, Prologue, l. 490: "he cowde in little thing have suffisaunce;" and Clerks Tale, l. 759: "As to his verray worldly suffisaunce." In both these passages we can trace the origin of 'sufficiency' as used in the text.
- Sugar*, Waferer to have, 25
- Suppers*, Steward's Chamberlayne allowed when he will have them, 6
- With king allowed to Chamberlayn if banneret, 7
- Surcharge*, overcharge, 48
- Surgeon*, 16
- 1 yeoman to be (Edw. IV), 66, 67
- Surveyor of Dresser*, 22
- Sutors*, to be entered in coroner's roll of marshals, 56
- Tailles, Tallies*, 13, 38
- Rule concerning, 29
- For wheat bought to be given before it passes into purveyor's hands, 25
- To be made to them that sell bread, 25
- For hay, oats, etc., 42
- Tailor*, charge of, 11
- Tallwode dimidium*, half a bundle of cut or chopt wood, 64, 65
- Tankers*, tankards; butler to be answerable for, 28
- Thomas de Borhunt*, 44
- Thorne, our Lord's*, offering to, 62
- Three Kings*, 62
- Thresover*, Sir Roger de Northburghc, 5. See *Treasurer*.
- Toncl*, tun, 61. Fr. "*Tonneau*": m. A Tunne; or (generally) any great vessell or peece of Caske for Wine, &c.; as a Tunne, Pipe, Hogshead, &c. *Tonnelet*: m. A

- little Tunne, or small peece of Caske."—Cotgrave.
- Torches*, Clerk of Spicery to survey laying up of, 10. See *Lights*.
- Tortis*, Clerk of Spicery to survey laying up of, 10. See *Lights*.
- Towels*, allowed to Confessor's boys, 14
- Traventers*, trauntors, pedlars, 35 and note
- Treasurer* of Wardrobe, 6
 Accounts daily, 7
 Name of, 58
 To be at account, etc., 52
 Penalty incurred by, for delaying the account, 58
 May tarry in London, 59
 To examine achates, 60
 To charge baker to make purveyance of wheat, 25
 May permit Clerks of Counting Table to dine in wardrobe, 8
 To command Hall Squires, 23
 Clerks of Privy Seal to have wages more or less at discretion of, 9
 Persons arrested by porter to be carried before, 38
 To punish those who take fees, 53
- Trinity Week*, 59
- Trompours*, trompetours, 46
- Tunnes* of wine to be examined by clerks and controller, 61
- Under Almoner*, 15
- Under Clark*, Pantry and Buttery, 23
- Under Usher* of Wardrobe, his duties, etc., 12
- Usher* : King's kitchen, 33
 Of Larder, 34
- Ushers of Hall*, 50
 Of king's chamber, 18
- Valets of office*, Household kitchen akers, 33
- Vallets de Mestier*, allowance for, 14
- (*Vallets de Mestier* continu'd)
- Only kitchen, to have pages, 51
- Of the Almonry, 15
- 2 Bakers, 26
- Bird-taker's allowance as, 45
- 2 Butlery porters, 30
- Valet Carnaver, 42
- Of Cup House, 29
- Ewer, 27
- Fisher, 46
- Fruiterer's, 13
- Fuer, 21
- 1 Garbager, without robes and wages, 36
- 2 Hall, under Serjant Ushers, 21
- Herbergeour, under Warden of palfreys, 40
- Herberger of cart horses, 41
- 2 Huntsman's valets barils, 44
- 1 Huntsman's valet to vent the horn, 44
- Of king's chamber, 19
- 5 king's kitchen, 32
- 5 Household kitchen, 33
- 2 Larder porters, 34
- Usher of larder, 34
- For Marshalsy prison, 55, 57
- Naper, 26
- King's pantry, 24
- Pantry, 24
- Pantry purveyor of bread for Household, 25
- 2, of pitcher house, 29
- 1, of poultry office, 35
- Porter for garner, 42
- Of porters' office, 38
- Purveyor of ale, 29
- 2, purveyors for avenery, 41
- Serjeant Purveyor's, 19
- 2, of sausery, 37
- 2, of scullery, 37
- Stable-valets, 43
- Stud-groom's valets, same number as horses, 44
- Stud-groom's valet ferroure, 44
- Verser, 29
- Wine drawer, 29
- 2, to work wax, 14
- Vent*, to, the horn, 44
- Verser*, 29
- Vessel*, of brasse, etc., serjant of scullery to achate and purvey, 36

- Vierge*, 17, 48, liberty or precinct of a town. Fr. "*Verge*: f. . . A Sergeants verge or mace . . . *Le pouvoir de la verge, & sergenterie*. The libertie, or precinct, wherein a Sergeant may arrest, &c."—Cotgrave.
- Vittailles*, to be examined by controller, 7
 Rule respecting insufficient, 7
 Officers of Household, not to be taken into lodgings by, 49
- Waferer*, 25
- Wages*: of Clerks, Serjants at Armes, and Squires of Household in Marshals roll, 39
 Loss of, a punishment, 50
 Achators, vij d. ob., 31
 Almoner's, vij d. ob., 15
 Archers, iij d. a day, 46
 3 Assayers, vij d. ob. a day, 22
 Avenery clerks, vj d. ob. a day, 39
 Baker, vij d. ob. a day, 26
 Bakers, 2 Valets, ij d. a day in pantry roll, 26
 Bird-taker, ij d. a day, 45
 Boys, Physician's three, j d. ob., 16
 Boys, Confessor's three, each j d. ob., 14
 Boy, Herberger of cart horses', j d. ob. a day, 41
 Marshalsy boy, ij d. ob. a day, 39
 Butler Serjant, Household, and king's, both vij d. ob. a day, 28
 2 Butlery porters, ij d. a day in butlery roll, 30
 Carnaver Valet, ij d. a day, 42
 Charioteers, iij d. a day, 43
 Chandler's, vij d. ob., 14
 Dean of Chapel, amount not stated, 14
 Dean's clerks, iij d. ob. a day, 15
 Five Chaplains, vij d. a day, 15
 Clerks of Counting Table, vij d. ob. a day, or iij d. ob. as their state, etc., 8
 Controller's, 8
 Cooks, four, vij d. ob. a day, 32
 Ewer's, iij d. ob. a day, 21
 Fore-riders, j d. a day, 43
 Ferretter's, ij d. a day, 45
- (*Wages continu'd*)
 Ferretter's boy, j d. a day, 45
 Fisher, ij d. a day, 46
 Fruiterer's, vij d. ob. a day, 13
 Garner porter (valet), ij d. a day, 42
 Hackneyman, j d. ob. a day, 43
 24 Hall Squires, vij d. ob. a day, 23
 Herberger of palfreys, etc. (valet), ij d. a day, 40
 Herberger of cart horses (valet), ij d. a day, 41
 Huntsman, Sir Thomas de Borhunt, vij d. ob. a day; when absent from Court, xij d., 45
 2 Huntsmen valets-barils, j d. ob. a day, 44
 Lardner's, iij d. ob. a day, 34
 Larder porter when absent from Court, ij d. a day in kitchen roll, 34
 Launder, king's, iij d. ob. a day, 27
 ——— of Naperly, iij d. ob. a day, 27
 Serjants Marshals of Hall, vij d. ob. a day, 22
 Messengers when absent, iij d. a day,
 Serjant Naper, iij d. ob. a day, 26
 Otterhunter's, ij d. a day, 45
 Otterhunter's 2 boys, j d. ob. a day, 45
 King's paneter, vij d. ob. a day, 24
 Pantry clerk, vij d. ob. a day, 23
 Pantry valet purveyor of bread, when not able to be in Hall, ij d. a day, 25
 Partringer's, ij d. a day, 45
 Partringer's boy, j d. ob. a day, 45
 Porter, Serjant, vij d. ob. a day, 38
 1 Poulter valet when out of Court on business, ij d. a day in kitchen roll, 36
 Valet purveyor of ale, ij d. a day in buttery roll, 29
 2 Purveyors of avenery (valets), ij d. a day, 42
 Serjant sauser, vij d. ob. a day, 37
 Scullery Serjant who keeps silver, iij d. ob. a day, 37
 Serjant of scullery, iij d. ob. a day, 36
 Spicery clerk, 3 d. a day, 10
 12 Squires of king's chamber, each vij d. ob. a day

(Wages continu'd)

- 3 Squires of king's mouth, each vii d. ob. a day, 18
 4 Squires for the body, 7 d. ob. a day (Edw. IV), 64, 65
 40 Squires of household, 7 d. ob. a day (Edw. IV), 68
 4 yeomen of chamber, 3 d., 66, 67
 Someters, ij d. a day, 43
 Stable valets, ij d. a day, 43
 Stud-groom's boy, j d. a day, 44
 Stud-groom's valets, ij d. a day, 44
 Surgeon, xii d. a day
 Trumpeters and minstrels, at discretion of Steward and Treasurer, 46
 Usher purveyor of fuel, vij d. ob. a day, 18
 Under Ushers of Hall, vii d. ob. a day, 21
 Under Ushers of Wardrobe, 3 d. ob. by the day, 12
 Waferer, vij d. ob. a day, 25
 Warden of palfreys when absent from Court, iij d. ob. a day, 40
 Warden of palfrey's boy, 40
 Warden of Privy Seal to have, 9
 Clerks of Privy Seal to have, 9
 King's wards to have, according to their estate, 17
 Wardrobe porters, 2 d. a day, 12.
 See also *Fees*.
Walter de Norwich, 58
Walter de Stapleton, 58
Warde, charge, control, 53
Warden, 60
Warden or Keeper of Privy Seal has 2 messes de grosse, 9
Warden of palfreys, 39, 40
Wardens of Viandes, 18
Wardrobe, Purveyor of, 11
 Chief Usher of. See *Spicery clerk*.
Wardrobe: Accounts, 49, 59
 Rules concerning, 7, 11
 Ordinance for the state of, when and where made, 58
 Writing concerning, to be done by clerks of counting table under cofferer, 8
 Always to be sufficient money in, 58

(Wardrobe continu'd)

- Names of traventers to be entered in, 34
 What clerk purveyor of, is to deliver to chief usher of, 10
 Waferer to have sugar in, 25
 Serjant sauser to receive his saucers of silver in, 37
 Serjant under Usher of, to lodge in, 12
 Controller's clerk and clerks of counting table to lie in, 8
 Clerk purveyor for, to lie in, 9
 Chandler to make his livery every day in, 13
 Fines levied by Market Coroner to be paid into, 17
 Money rising from pleas in Hall to be delivered in, 17
 Purveyances of stud-groom to be certified to, 44
 Sellers of wheat to be paid according to tallies and foils in, 26
 Payments according to tallies to be made in, 31
Wards, King's, 17, 18
Wax, 10
Weeke, weak, 52
Weights, measures, etc., to be examined by Market Coroner, 17
Weights of wardrobe and spicery to be uniform with those used throughout the kingdom, 11
Welsh boys, 51
Wheat, purveyance of, 25
Whitsontide, 62
 Half-yearly fees payable at, 6
Wiggeton, Sir Gilbert de, Countroller of wardrobe, commanded to prepare ordinances, 5
William de Molton, 58
William Plane Maure, 55
Wine allowed to: Achators, half a pitcher, 31
 Avenry clerk, half a pitcher, 39
 Baker, half a pitcher, 26
 Chief butler, j pitcher, 27
 Serjant butler (Household), half a pitcher, 28

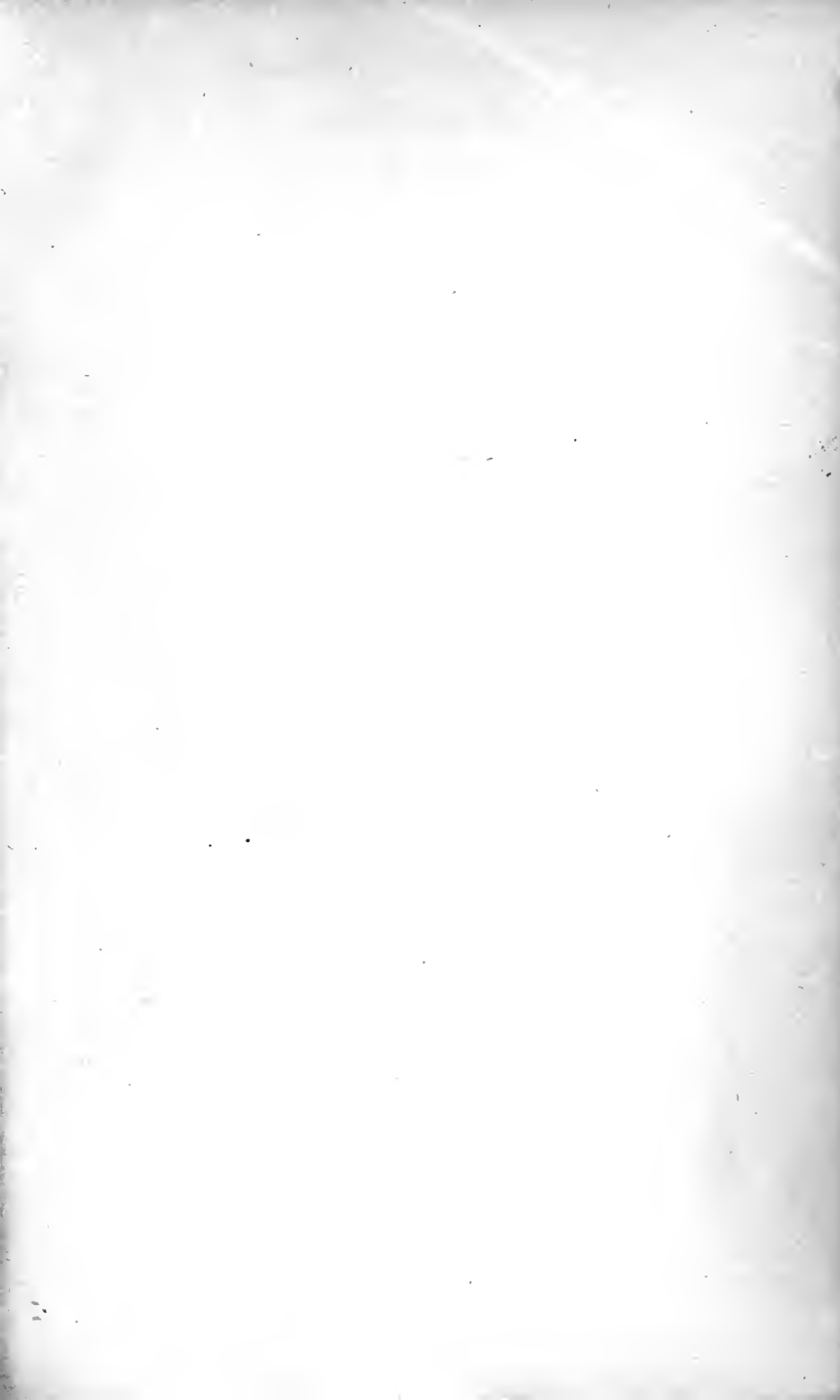
(Wine continu'd)

Serjant butler (king's), a pitcher, 28
 Chandler, half a pitcher, 14
 Chief chaplain, 1 pitcher, 15
 Clerks of counting table, 2 pitchers, 8
 Clerk of kitchen, 1 pitcher and a half, 30
 Cofferer allowed 1 pitcher, 8
 Controller, 1 pitcher, 8
 King's Confessor, 2 pitchers, 14
 Cooks, four, half a pitcher each, 32
 Knights Marshals of Hall, 1 pitcher, 22
 Allowed to knights, chief usher's, 1 pitcher, 20
 Lardner, half a pitcher, 34
 Serjants Marshals of Hall, half a pitcher, 22
 Marshals, chief clerk, 1 pitcher and a half, 39
 Chief paneter, half a pitcher, 24
 Pantry clerk, 1 pitcher and a half, 23
 Physician, 1 gallon, 16
 Serjants at Armes, 3 pitchers, 20
 Serjant sauser, half a pitcher, 37
 Squires for king's body, 1 quart (Edw. IV), 64, 65
 Serjant of scullery, half a pitcher, 37
 Serjant porter, half a pitcher, 38
 Steward, 1 sextier, 6

(Wine continu'd)

Surgeon, 1 pitcher, 16
 Surveyor of dresser, half a pitcher, 22
 Under ushers Hall, half a pitcher, 21
 Warden of palfreys, half a pitcher, 40
Winedrawer, 29
Wines in grosse, controller to be at receipt of, 7
Wines: Purveyance of, etc., 47, 61
 Quantity to be testified in wardrobe, 61
Wives, officers not to allow their, to follow the Court, 56
Women: which are in chief with the king, 56
 Of foolish life, forbidden to follow the Court, 56, 57
 Punishment of, 57
Woodstock, ordinances at, 50, 58
Yeomen of chamber, 4; their duties, etc. (Edw. IV), 66, 67
York, Archbishop of, ordinances read and assented to in presence of, 5, 58
Zukur, sugar, 25 (margin)





Among the Texts and Essays, &c., preparing for the Chaucer Society are:—

Early English Pronunciation, with especial reference to Shakspeare and Chaucer, by Alexander J. Ellis, Esq., F.R.S. Part V (*to be ready in 1877*).

Autotype Specimens of the chief Chaucer Manuscripts, chosen by F. J. Furnivall, Part I. [*In the Press.*]

The Tale of *Beryn*, Part II. Introduction and Glossary.

Prof. Bernhard Ten-Brink's "CHAUCER: Studies on the History of his Development, and the Chronology of his Writings," Part I, translated by Miss Otilie Blind, and revised by the Author.

Chaucer's *Road to Canterbury*, with Ogilby's Plan of it, 1675, and William Smith's Plan of the City of Canterbury in 1588; by the Rev. W. A. Scott Robertson, M.A., Hon. Sec. of the Kent Archæological Institute.

Part II of Mr W. M. Rossetti's Comparison of Chaucer's *Troilus and Cryseyde* with Boccaccio's *Filostrato*.

Life-Records of Chaucer, Part III, The Household book of Isabella, wife of Prince Lionel, third son of Edward III, in which the name of GEOFFREY CHAUCER first occurs; edited from the unique MS in the Brit. Museum, by Edward A. Bond, Esq., Keeper of the MSS. Part IV, Other Enrolments and Documents from the Public Record Office, the City of London Town-Clerk's Office, &c., edited by Walford D Selby, Esq., and F. J. Furnivall, Esq., M.A.

'A detailed Comparison of Chaucer's *Knight's Tale* with the *Teseide* of Boccaccio,' by HENRY WARD, Esq., of the MS Department of the British Museum.

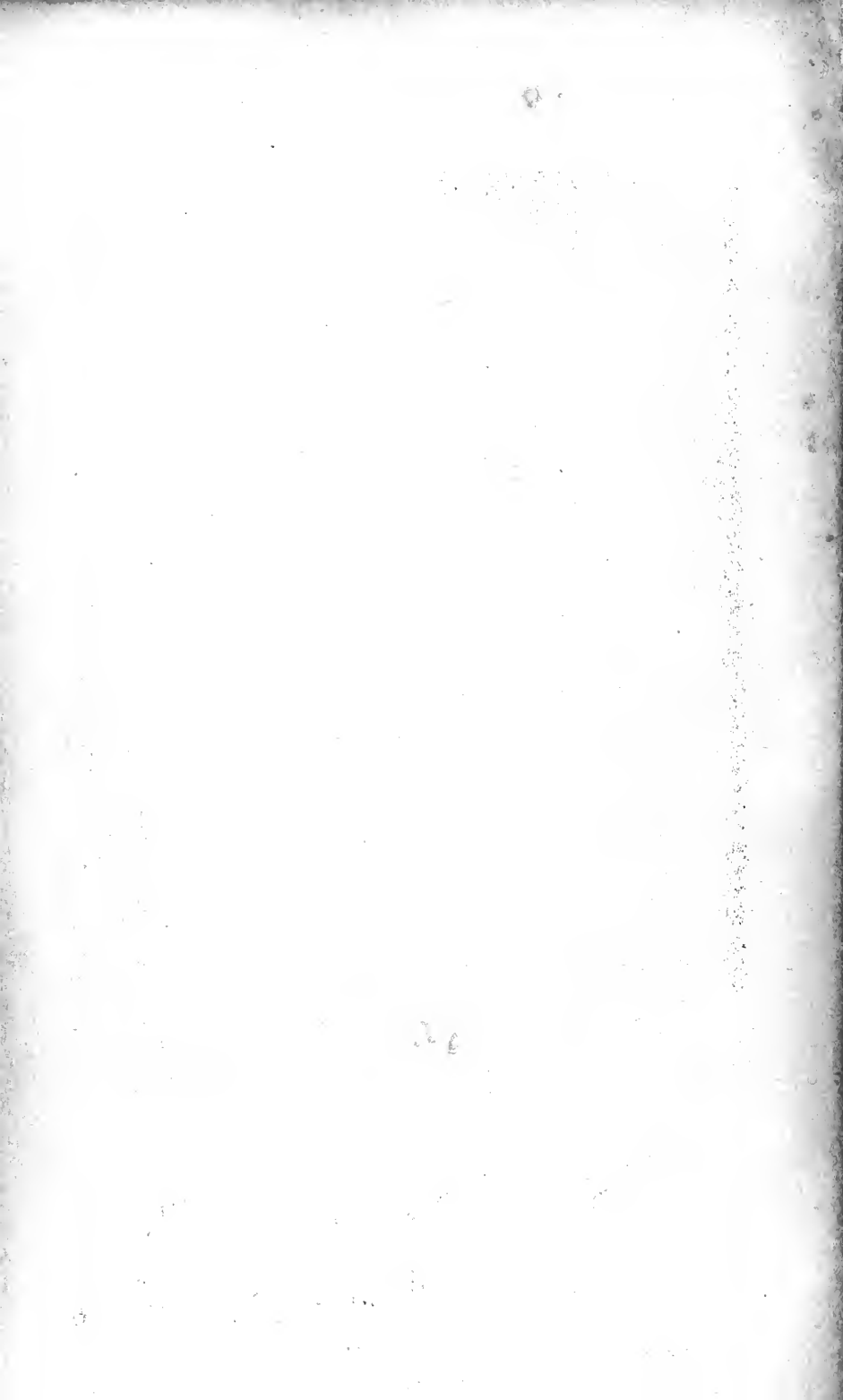
The third French work will be either Guillaume de Machault's *Remède de Fortune* and *Dit de la Fontaine Amoureuse* (to compare with Chaucer's *Dethe of Blanche the Duchesse*), or Jean de Meun's *Livre de Melibée et de Prudence* (from Albertano of Brescia's *Liber Consolationis*, A.D. 1246), or Guillaume de Machault's *Dit du Lyon*, the possible original of Chaucer's lost *Book of the Leo*, edited from the MSS, for the first time, by Professor PAUL MEYER. This will be followed by such originals of Chaucer's other works as are known, but are not of easy access to subscribers.



Frederic J. Fernald

Oct. 3, 1876

Born, Feb. 4, 1825



LIFE-RECORDS OF CHAUCER.

III.

Chaucer as Page in the Household of the Countess of Ulster,

WIFE OF LIONEL, 3RD SON OF KING EDWARD III,
A.D. 1356-9.

A MS. EDITED BY
EDWARD A. BOND, C.B., LL.D.

Chaucer as Forester of North Petherton,

CO. SOMERSET, A.D. 1390—1400.

BY
WALFORD D. SELBY, Esq.

WITH AN APPENDIX BY WALTER RYE, Esq.,
ON CHAUCER'S GRANDFATHER, AND THE POET'S CONNECTION
WITH LYNN AND NORFOLK.

PUBLISHED FOR THE CHAUCER SOCIETY
BY N. TRÜBNER & CO., 57 & 59, LUDGATE HILL,
LONDON, E.C.

1886.

Second Series,

NO. 21.

R. CLAY AND SONS, CHAUCER PRESS, BUNGAY.

CHAUCER IN THE HOUSEHOLD OF
THE COUNTESS OF ULSTER.

FRAGMENTS OF

The Household Accounts of Elizabeth,
Countess of Ulster,

WIFE OF LIONEL, 3RD SON OF KING EDWARD THE THIRD,
A.D. 1356—1359.

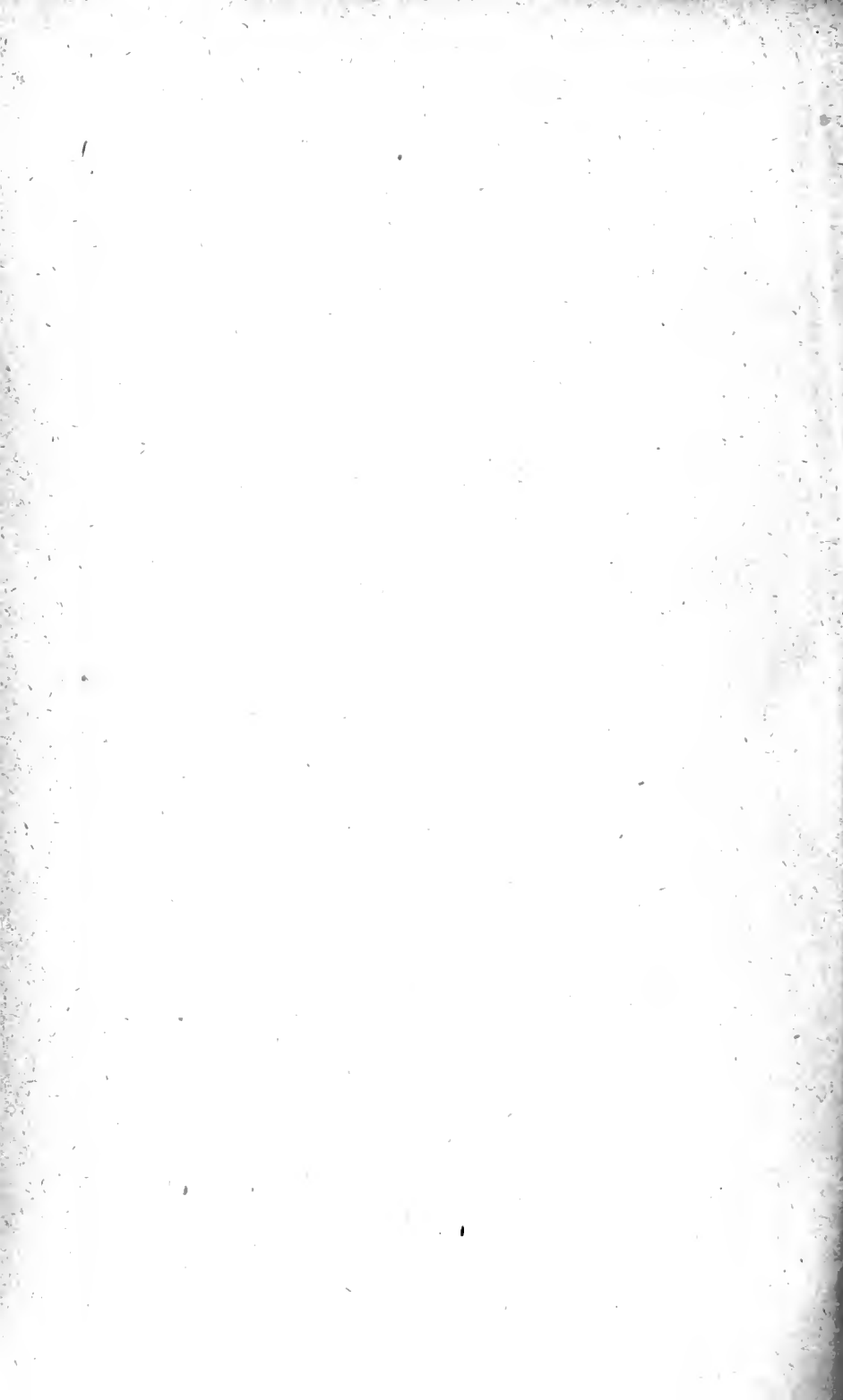
EDITED

FROM THE ADDITIONAL MS. 18,632 IN THE BRITISH MUSEUM,

BY

EDWARD A. BOND, C.B., LL.D.,

PRINCIPAL LIBRARIAN OF THE BRITISH MUSEUM.



NEW FACTS IN THE LIFE OF GEOFFREY CHAUCER.

[*Reprinted with some alterations from the 'Fortnightly Review'*
of August 15, 1866, pp. 28-35.]

IN the year 1851 several volumes of manuscripts were purchased for the British Museum from the Earl of Denbigh. One of these—now the Additional MS. 18,632—containing the “Storie of Thebes” by John Lydgate, and Occleve’s poem “De regimine Principum,” was found to have the covers lined with parchment leaves of old writing. They were clipped on one side, and were somewhat defaced; but the first inspection sufficed to show that they were fragments of a Household Account of the middle of the fourteenth century, and a closer examination proved that the entries were dated by the years 30, 31, 32 and 33, evidently of the reign of Edward the Third, corresponding with the years 1356 to 1359, and that the name “Galfridus Chaucer” occurred more than once. A closer study of the items made it evident that the Account was kept for a lady, a Countess by rank; that she resided principally at Hatfield in Yorkshire, then in the hands of the Crown; that the Earl, her husband, was then living; that she was nearly related to the Royal Family, and was in some way connected with Ireland; that she frequently visited Campsey, in Suffolk; and that she had a daughter, Philippa, who, though still an infant and under the care of a nurse, went through the ceremony of betrothal during the period of the Account. These facts sufficed to identify the lady of the Account with Elizabeth, daughter and heiress of William de Burgh, the last Earl of Ulster of that name, and wife of Lionel, third son of King Edward the Third. Her connection with the Royal Family of England was twofold, by her marriage with Prince Lionel, and by descent from Joan of Acre, daughter of Edward I. She was heiress to immense

estates in Ireland. Her mother, Maud, sister of Henry first Duke of Lancaster, was at the time of the Account a nun in Campsey Priory; and her daughter Philippa was betrothed in the year 1358 to Edmund Mortimer, Earl of March. The lady herself had been left by the death of her father, when in her first year, the heiress of the earldom of Ulster, and had been brought up by Queen Philippa, to whom her wardship had been assigned by Edward III., in companionship with the royal children. As early as the year 1341, and when she was only nine years old, she was affianced by the King to his son Lionel, six years her junior. The betrothal was celebrated on the 15th of August, in that year, and the marriage took place in the year 1352.

Of the two leaves which remain of the Account, the one refers to payments made for the wardrobe, the other to donations. In each the date of every payment, as well as the place at which it was made, is recorded; so that we are enabled to trace the movements of the lady herself by following the successive entries. Arranging the items of the two divisions of payments in one series, we obtain the following results:—The Countess was in London on the 4th of April, 1356. In June and July she was at Reading, one of the royal residences, having apparently recently been at Southampton. On the 2nd of September she was at Stratford-le-Bow in company with her husband, Prince Lionel; and, about the same time, a payment is made to a sumpter-man of the Abbot of Waltham for conducting the bed—as it is simply expressed in the Account, but which includes all the furniture belonging to it—of her daughter from Stratford to Campsey. There is nothing to show where she spent the winter of 1356; probably at Hatfield; but early in April in 1357 we find her in London equipping herself for the festival of Easter, and also for a visit to the court at Windsor, to assist at a celebration of the feast of St. George. And at this period occur two entries showing that an entire suit of clothes, consisting of a paltock, or short cloak, a pair of red and black breeches, with shoes, was provided for Geoffrey Chaucer. Articles of dress are paid for also for an attendant on the Countess designated as Philippa Pan'—probably the contracted form of the word Panetaria—mistress of the

pantry. And, as establishing the antiquity of giving drink-money to workmen, it is worth noting that, in the payments made for these different articles of dress, certain sums are included as given to the working tailors for drink, "after the custom of London." On the 20th of May an article of dress, of which the name is lost by a defect in the leaf, is purchased for Geoffrey Chaucer in London; and attire is provided for the Countess herself in preparation for the feast of Pentecost to be celebrated at Woodstock. In July the Countess is at Doncaster and at Hatfield in Yorkshire, at which latter place she remains over Christmas. While there she receives letters from Ireland; and a payment is made to a servant of the Duke of Lancaster for bringing a letter from his daughter Lady Blanche.

In December of the same year (1357) a man receives money for accompanying Philippa Pan' from a place named Pullesdon to Hatfield; and this item is immediately followed by the entry of a donation of two shillings and sixpence to Geoffrey Chaucer "for necessaries at Christmas." At the same period a present of money is made to a servant of Lady Mowbray, sister to the Countess's mother, for coming with five horses from Axholme, the residence of Sir John Mowbray, to Hatfield, by the way of Blyth, the direct passage of the river being obstructed by the ice. At this time also John of Ghent, then Earl of Richmond, must have been a visitor at Hatfield, for New-Year gifts are presented by the Countess to his cook and clerk of the kitchen.

The date of the next payment is the 4th of April, 1358, when sums are allowed to the Panetaria, the cook and the nurse, A. D. 1358. of the Countess's daughter, for debts incurred at Campsey; where it may be presumed the child had been taken, in order to be under the care of her grandmother, Prioress of the House, during the absence of the Earl and Countess on a visit to the court.

In the same month of the year 1358, considerable payments are made in equipping the Countess for the great feast of St. George, held at Windsor on this occasion with peculiar pomp and magnificence; and a bodice, lined with fur, is provided for her attendant Philippa Pan'. In the same month a payment is made for a mourning cloak, under the designation of a "rue-mantle," for the

Countess: it is uncertain for what occasion. We trace the movements of the Countess at a later period of the year from another authority; for it is stated in a household account of the Dowager Queen Isabella that the Countess of Ulster supped with her at Hertford Castle on the 20th of July.

In August of 1358, the Countess was at Anglesey, and on the 1st of September in Liverpool. And in the latter month a black tunic, mantle and cape, are provided for her, as mourning for Queen Isabella, who had died on the 23rd of August. Subsequent entries show that the Countess attended at the Queen's funeral, which took place at the church of the Friars Minors, in Newgate Street, on the 27th of November. In September and October several entries occur for dress provided for Lady Philippa, the Countess's daughter, for the ceremony of her betrothal. Though almost an infant, she was affianced to Edmund Mortimer, Earl of March, either at this time, or, as elsewhere stated, in the spring of the following year.

On the 6th of November the Countess is at Reading; and shortly after we find her seeing the keeper of the lions in the Tower of London. Early in 1359, she makes a present of a mark to two minstrels of the Queen of Scotland, Johanna, sister of Edward III. and wife of David Bruce, King of Scotland, who had been in England since the spring of 1358, and had been residing with Queen Isabella at the time of her death. Shortly after this entry, a mark is paid to six valets of the Duke of Lancaster, for attending the Countess's chariot with torches from the Duke's hotel of the "Neyth" to her wardrobe in London. And at Lent of the same year, 1359, the Countess appears to have returned to Hatfield, where again a "rue-mantle" or mourning cloak is provided for her.

Now, that the Geoffrey Chaucer mentioned in these accounts is indeed the poet himself we can have no scruple in assuming, as his whole history shows him to have had close relations with the court, and as we know from authentic documents that he was pensioned by the Crown for services so early as the year 1367. The direct result, therefore, of these entries will be to show that his connection with the Royal Family dated from at least as early as the year 1357, and to explain the nature of it. For the character of the

entries renders it nearly certain that Chaucer was attached in some capacity to the service of either Prince Lionel himself or his Countess. The Countess of Ulster, as an heiress of great estates, and as the wife of a Prince of the Blood, may well be conceived to have had attendants of her own, in a measure independent of her husband's establishment, although, of course, united in the joint household; and the names of the persons through whom the payments of wardrobe expenses in this Account are made are found in connection with her service, in public documents, prior to her marriage. Yet the paucity of the items for an account of three years' duration, and the length of interval between the dates of many of them, would seem to imply that the account mainly referred to periods when the Countess was living apart from her husband's household. In this case, the persons found in attendance on her might be regarded simply as belonging to the Prince's establishment, and temporarily engaged in her special service. Some five or six persons are named so repeatedly as to warrant the conclusion that they were more directly attached to her; and it is remarkable that of the whole number only Chaucer and the lady styled Philippa Pan' are provided for from the Countess's wardrobe; and Chaucer only in one instance.

But being evidently in some capacity in the household of the Prince and his Countess, we have to inquire what his position might have been. If we were certain of his age at this period we should have much assistance in determining the question; but his biographers are not agreed upon the year of his birth. On the faith of a monumental inscription of no earlier a date than the middle of the sixteenth century, this has been most commonly fixed at 1328. His own statement in the Scrope and Grosvenor cause, tried in October, 1386, that he was forty years of age and upwards and had borne arms twenty-seven years, has been disregarded. As some other witnesses have been proved to have been incorrect in the statement of their ages as much as from ten to twenty years, it has been argued that no reliance ought to be placed on this similar affirmation of Chaucer, if, as it is averred, it cannot readily be reconciled with other assumed dates in his biography. Surely, however, we ought to have some scruples in setting aside so important a statement from the

poet's own lips; more especially as his additional and more precise assertions, that he had borne arms twenty-seven years and was taken prisoner at a particular place in France, are found to be verified by circumstances of the French invasion of the year 1359. If exact in one statement, why so extremely inaccurate in another? Assume the age of forty-six to be implied by the expression of forty and upwards, and we fix the year of Chaucer's birth to 1340; so that, at the beginning of the year 1357, when he is first mentioned in these fragments, Chaucer would be about seventeen years of age; and, if so, we may risk the conjecture that his position in Prince Lionel's household was that of a page, with which the entries would seem very well to agree. For instance, the amount paid for Chaucer's entire suit for his visit to Windsor, namely seven shillings—equivalent to about five pounds in modern money—is sufficiently high to accord with superior rank; yet the payments made for him seem on a lower scale than those for other members of the household mentioned in the Account, and who, therefore, it may be presumed, were much his elders. The paltock, or short cloak, provided for him in 1357, cost four shillings; while, in two other instances, a similar garment for other attendants is entered at six shillings and eightpence, and eight shillings and threepence. A Christmas present to Chaucer "for necessaries," as it is expressed, is put down at two shillings and sixpence; while to some other members of the household sums of thirteen shillings and eightpence, or twenty shillings, are presented.

Whether a page in the household of Prince Lionel, or a special attendant on the Countess of Ulster, it would appear that he was attached to their service certainly as early as the beginning of the year 1357, and was at that period at Hatfield, in Yorkshire; that he was present at the celebration of the feast of St. George, at Edward III.'s court, in attendance on the Countess, in April of that year; that he followed the court to Woodstock; and that he was again at Hatfield, probably from September, 1357, to the end of March, 1358, and would have witnessed there the reception of John of Ghent, then Earl of Richmond. We may infer that he was present at that most splendid entertainment given by Edward III. to the royal personages then in England—including the King of

France, the Queen of Scotland, the King of Cyprus, and that saddest of figures in such a scene, the sister of the captive King of France and Edward's own mother, the almost-forgotten Queen Isabella—at what was ever after called the Great Feast of St. George in the same year; and that he was at Reading with the court and at London in the following winter. The Earl and Countess would probably have spent part of the same season and the early part of 1359 at Hatfield; but in May, we know from other historical records that Prince Lionel, and doubtless his wife, the Countess of Ulster, were present at the wedding of John of Ghent and Lady Blanche of Lancaster, at Reading, and at the famous joustings subsequently held in London in honour of that event. We may thus follow out Chaucer's course of life from the commencement of the year 1357 to the autumn of 1359, when he would have joined the royal army which invaded France, in the retinue of Prince Lionel, and in the course of which service, we know from his own information, he was made a prisoner by the French. A period of three years will be added to what is known of his biography; these years belonging to the earlier part of his life, in which there is the most uncertainty, and a knowledge of which is most essential to the explanation of his after career. Moreover, the proof of his connection with Prince Lionel will give countenance to the assertion of Speght, rejected by later biographers, that Chaucer was present at the second marriage of the prince with Violante, daughter of Galeazzo Visconti, Lord of Milan, celebrated at that city in the year 1369, and at which he is said to have met the Italian poet Petrarch.

A special value of these facts will consist in their showing that, at the outset of his career, Chaucer would have had the benefit of society of the highest refinement, in personal attendance on a young and spirited prince of the blood; that he would have had his imagination fed by scenes of the most brilliant court festivities; and that he would have had the advantage of royal patrons in the early exercise of his genius. We learn too the probable origin of the interest in his fortunes shown throughout his life by John of Ghent, Duke of Lancaster. Entries in these fragments represent this prince, under his then title of Earl of Richmond, as a visitor at Hatfield

at Christmas, in the year 1357, some fifteen months before his marriage with Lady Blanche of Lancaster, who is also mentioned as corresponding with the Countess of Ulster at this time. Her father, the Duke of Lancaster, was absent in France, where he held the office of Governor of Guienne; and it is probable that she may have been on a visit at Axholme, the seat of Lord Mowbray, husband to her aunt, Lady Joan of Lancaster. Lady Mowbray was the sister of the Countess of Ulster's mother, and the two families appear in the Account in intimate intercourse.

Speculations suggest themselves that the Countess's attendant Philippa may have been Chaucer's future wife, also a Philippa as conjectured, and in the service of Queen Philippa in the year 1366. The Countess died in 1363, only four years after the period of the Account, and nothing would be more likely than that the principal lady of her household should have found shelter after her death in the family of her husband's mother.

I may add that the volume, to the covers of which these fragments were pasted, was given, in the year 1508, to the monastery of Amesbury by Richard Wyginton. It was probably rebound there, these parchment leaves being used to strengthen the sides of the book. Amesbury was the retreat of more than one Princess of England; and an aunt of the Countess of Ulster—Isabella of Lancaster—was Abbess of the House at about the period of the Account.¹

EDWARD A. BOND.

¹ In the original paper on these Fragments, printed in the *Fortnightly Review*, I had remarked on the illustration they seemed to afford to an interpretation of the poem known as "Chaucer's Dream," now no longer accepted as written by Chaucer himself.

FRAGMENTS OF AN ACCOUNT BOUND UP WITH A
MANUSCRIPT IN THE BRITISH MUSEUM;—

ADDITIONAL MS. 18,632.

[*Ei*]DEM pro factura garniture Philippe Panetarie ex pre- fol. 2. b.
cepto domine apud Reding xxiiij. die Julii anno xxx°, VIII. s.
lecto bluetto filie domine reparando per iij. dies apud garderobam
domine Londonie per visum et auxilium ham mense Octobris
anno predicto, cuilibet eorum per diem vj. d., III. s. VI. d. Pro opere
linure Londonie per Robertum Pynel cum emptione xij.
botens de panno pro dictis capis sub gurgite missis per
Dagenet versus Gasconiam, primo die Decembris ‘anno predicto,’
II. s. III. d. v. operatoribus conductis n’ domine apud gar-
derobam Londonie per v. dies contra festum Pasche mense aprilis
anno xxxj°, cuilibet eorum per diem VI. d. Pro
factura xl. botens de panno Londoniensi pro ij. corsettis domine
precepto ejusdem, xij. die III. s. VI. d. iij. operatoribus
conductis per Robertum Pynel Londonie et operantibus super garni-
turam domine per iij. [*dies contra festum*] Sancti Georgii mense
Aprilis ‘anno predicto,’ cuilibet eorum per diem vj. d., III. s. VI. d.
ij. pagettis consimiliter ‘ibidem’ conductis per consimi-
libus operibus, ut supra, per iij. dies, eiisdem die et anno, cuilibet
eorum per diem iij. d., II. s. consimiliter ‘ibidem’ con-
ductis per dictum Robertum pro consimilibus operibus ut supra, per
v. dies et dimidium, eiisdem die et anno, cuilibet eorum per diem
. j. pagetto consimiliter ‘ibidem’ conducto per dictum
Robertum pro consimilibus operibus, ut supra, per v. dies et dimidium,
eiisdem die et anno, capienti [*per diem. iij. d.*] XVI. d., OB. Pro
potacione de consuetudine Londoniensi data supradictis operatoribus
per vices per dictum Robertum VI. d. Pro
factura j. paris manicarum cape domine Londonie per dictum
Robertum Pynel contra festum predictum XVI. s.
Pro factura j. tunice Philippe Panetarie Londonie contra dictum
festum per dictum Robertum Pynel, II. s. VI. d. Galfrid’
Chaucer, Londonie, xx°. die maii anno predicto, II. s. Gyllelmo

garderobe pro iij. operatoribus garniture domine in ebdomada ante Pentecosten apud Wodestoke, anno predicto, III. s. Eidem Gyllelmo pro ij. [operatoribus] ibidem conductis pro consimilibus operibus domine, ut supra, per vj. dies in predicta ebdomada anno predicto, cuilibet eorum per diem
. . . [operatoribus] conductis Londonie per Robertum Pynel operantibus super garnituram domine ac eciam defectus lecti domine ubi necesse d. 'ex precepto domine Comitisse,' per xx. dies mensibus Novembris et Decembris anno xxj°, capientibus per diem vj. d., X. s. Cuidam operatori [consimiliter] conducto per dictum Pynel operanti super garnituram domine per xij. dies ante Nativitatem domini 'anno predicto,' capienti per diem v. d., [V. s. Cuidam] operatori consimiliter ibidem conducto per dictum Pynel pro consimilibus operibus domine, ut supra, per vj. dies eiisdem diebus et anno, [capienti per diem] iij. d., II. s. Duobus operatoribus consimiliter ibidem conductis per dictum Pynel pro consimilibus operibus domine, ut supra, [per duos] dies anno predicto, cuilibet eorum per diem vj. d., II. s. v. operatoribus consimiliter ibidem conductis per dictum Pynel [pro consimilibus operi]bus domine, ut supra, in ebdomada Nativitatis contra festum Epiphanie apud Brestolliam, per v. dies anno predicto, cuilibet eorum [v. d. per diem], XII. s. VI. d. Pro factura j. paris manicarum cape domine per Robertum Pynel contra dictum festum, apud [anno] predicto, XVI. s. Pro potacione data supradictis operatoribus per predictum Pynel de consuetudine Londonie per vices d. Pro x. libris candelarum Paris' ~~de cotene~~ emptis pro operibus supradictis per dictum Pynel, precio libre ij. d., XX. d. [Quatuor operatoribus] conductis Londonie per Robertum Pynel operantibus super garnituram domine ibidem contra magnum festum Sancti Georgii per vj. dies anno xxxij°, cuilibet eorum per diem vj. d., XII. s. Pro factura j. corsetti pro Philippa Panetaria et pro opere peltrie ur' dicte Philippe, de precepto domine apud Wyndesoram xxj°. die aprilis anno predicto, II. s. Peterkyn de la [Reole] [factu]ra j. mantelli nigri rive 'riuemantelli' ad taxam, eiisdem die et anno, XIII. s. IIII. d. Cuidam operatori conducto operanti super garnituram domine apud Anglesey per x. dies mense

Augusti anno predicto, capienti per diem iij. d.,
 Pro factura j. corsetti domine cum xx. botens de panno emptis per
 Robertum Pynel Londonie xxiiij. die
 Pro factura j. nigre tunice pro domina cum lx. magnis
 botens et lx. minoribus pro eadem emptis Londonie iij°. [die Sep-
 tembris anno] xxxij°, III. s. VI. d. Eidem Johanni pro factura
 j. mantelli nigri cum j. nigra capa ibidem xiiij°. [die Septembris?]
 . . . s. III. d. Roberto Pynel pro l. botens de panno emptis pro
 j. corsetto pro domina Comitissa et liberatis Johanni Veisy [eisdem
 die et] anno, precio pecie j. d., III. s. II. d.

Summa pagine VIII. l. XII. s. VIII. d., OB.

ij. operatoribus conductis Londonie per Johannem Mas- fol. 2.
 syngham operantibus super garnituram domine Philippe contra diem
 [sponsalium?] in iij. ebdomada mensis Octobris anno xxxij°, cuilibet
 eorum per diem vij. d., III. s. VI. d. Pro . . . [operatoribus] con-
 ductis per dictum Massyngham pro consimilibus operibus ut supra
 per supradictos ij. dies anno predicto, cuilibet eorum per diem
 XVIII. d. Cuidam operatori consimiliter ibidem conducto per dictum
 Massyngham pro consimilibus operibus, ut supra, per vj. dies
 anno predicto, capientibus per diem vij. d., III. s. VI. d. Cuidam
 operatori consimiliter ibidem conducto per dictum [Massyngham] ut
 supra, per predictos vj. dies 'anno predicto,' capientibus per diem
 vj. d., III. s. Pro xlviij. magnis botens de minoribus emptis
 per predictum Johannem pro garnitura dicte Philippe botunanda
 Londonie xxvij. die Septembris anno predicto viij.
 operatoribus consimiliter ibidem conductis per dictum Johannem ad
 taxam pro garnitura dicte domine Philippe forranda [contra] dictum
 diem sponsalium 'anno predicto,' cuilibet eorum ij. s., XVI. s. Pro
 viij. libris candellarum de coten emptis per supradictis
 anno predicto, precio libre ij. d., XVI. d. Pro xix. candelis cere con-
 similiter emptis ibidem per predictum adaurat' et
 serico cerand' eadem vice et anno predicto, VI. d. Johanni Fidian
 } garcioni camere domine et operanti super predicta
 garnitura per x. 'ultimos' dies mensis Octobris anno predicto, III. s.
 Pro factura j. tunice et cape pro Reinpot Londonie
 vj. die Novembris anno predicto, II. s. ij. operatoribus conductis

Londonie per operantibus super garnitura funebri domine Comitisse contra diem sepulture Isabelle Regine per vj. dies secunde ebd[omade], [cuilibet] eorum per diem vj. d., IX. s. Pro vj. libris candelarum emptis per dictum Pynel pro operibus supradictis anno pre[dicto] Pro potacione data supradictis operatoribus per vices tam per manus Massyngham quam Roberti Pynel de consue[tudine Londonie] Petrokyn de la Reole pro factura j. nigri mantelli pro domina contra predictum diem sepulture xvj. Johanni Veisy pro furracione j. paris de botes pro domina de nigro agno apud Reding, eiisdem die [et anno] Duobus operatoribus conductis Londonie per J. Veysy operantibus ibidem super garnitura domine comitisse per xij. dies contra Nativitatem domini 'anno predicto,' cuilibet eorum per diem vj. d., XII. s. Cuidam operatori consimiliter ibidem conducto [per Johannem] Veisy pro consimilibus operibus domine ut supra per x. dies et dimidium contra festum predictum anno predicto, ca[pienti per diem.] vj. d., V. s. III. d. Cuidam operatori consimiliter ibidem conducto per Johannem Veisy pro consimilibus [operibus] contra predictum festum per xj. dies et dimidium anno predicto, capientibus per diem vj. d., V. s. IX. d. iij. [operatoribus consimiliter] ibidem conductis per dictum Veysy pro consimilibus operibus domine, ut supra, contra festum predictum per v. [dies,] cuilibet eorum per diem vj. d., VII. s. VI. d. Cuidam operatori consimiliter ibidem conducto per dictum [Veysy pro consimilibus] operibus domine, ut supra, contra predictum festum per ix. dies anno predicto, capienti per diem vj. d., IIII. s. VI. d. [Cuidam] operatori consimiliter ibidem conducto per predictum Veysy pro consimilibus operibus domine ut supra per x. dies, 'anno predicto,' capienti [per diem vj. d.] V. s. v. operatoribus 'pellitoribus' consimiliter ibidem conductis per dictum Veysy pro garnitura domine supradicta [contra dictum] festum furranda cum propriis forruris domine, per v. dies anno predicto, cuilibet eorum per diem v. Duobus operatoribus 'pellitoribus' consimiliter ibidem conductis per predictum Veysy pro consimilibus operibus domine, ut supra, anno predicto, [capientibus per] diem vj. d., VI. s. ij. operatoribus pellitoribus consimiliter ibidem conductis per dictum Veisy pro consimilibus

[*operibus domine*] per vij. dies anno predicto, cuilibet eorum per diem vj. d., VII. s. Pro xxiiij. libris candellarum de coten tam pro operibus taillerie quam peltrie secundum 'consuetudinem' Londonie anno predicto, precio libre ij. d., III. s. Pro potacione d per dictum Veisy de consuetudine Londonie per vices anno predicto III. s. III. d. Johanni Veisy existenti ditorum garniture domine per xij. dies contra festum Nativitatis anno predicto, capienti per diem vj. d., VI. s. Johanni Sch[*innare*] ibidem super operibus pellitrie predictae per viij. dies ut supra, capientibus per diem iiij. d., II. s. VIII. d. ij. operatoribus conductis Londonie pro tapetis quichsens maculatis ad hastiludia in Smetheuld munda[*ndis*] prine ebdomade quatragesime anno xxxiiij^o, cuilibet eorum per diem vj. d., II. s. Petrekyn de la Reole ~~mantello riae~~ 'riuemantello' panni nigri pro domina, vj. die aprilis anno predicto, XIII. s. III. d. Cuidam operatori

Summa pagine VII. l. XVII. s. I. d.

[DONA.]

Ex consimili dono domine ibidem eiisdem die et anno, t. 1012. III. s. III. d. ij. somettariis Prioris Wyntoniensis euntibus cum hernesio domine Comitisse de Southamptona usque Reding ex consimili dono domine . . . Junii anno predicto, III. s. III. d. Henrico de Bokyngham ex consimili dono domine apud Stretford ij^o. die Septembris anno predicto, XL. s. Nicholao Fithe-
lare ex consimili dono domine ibidem, [*eiisdem die et*] anno, VI. s. VIII. d. iij. hominibus Roberti Sauage ducentibus domino Comiti et domine Comitisse am lineam et mantellum de Hibernia usque Stretford ex parte dicti Roberti, ex consimili dono [*domine eiis*]dem die et anno, XX. s. Cuidam somettario abbatis de Waltham ducenti lectum domine [*Comitisse de*] Stretford usque Campesse, ex consimili dono domine ibidem, eiisdem die et anno, III. s. III. d. coquina domine Comitisse ex consimili dono domine ibidem, eiisdem die et anno, XII. d. Johanni ulno et dimidio riban largi de argento de cipre ab eo empto et liberato Johanni

Prior ex *consimili* dono riband Londonie, iij^o. die Aprilis anno *predicto*, XIII. s. IIII. d. Eidem Johanni ulnis riban stricti *consimiliter* ab eo *emptis et liberatis* eidem Johanni de *consimili* dono domine pro manicis [r]iband *ibidem*, eiisdem die *et anno*, II. s. X. d. Cuidam Paltokmakare Londonie pro j. paltok [*ab eodem empto et*] *liberato Galfrido Chaucer* de *consimili* dono domine *ibidem*, eiisdem die *et anno*, IIII. s. Pro j. pari ium 'nigro' *et rubeo et j. pari sotularium emptis* Londonie *et liberatis* eidem Galfrido de *consimili* dono domine *ibidem* [*eiisdem die et ann*]o, III. s. Johanni Weorstede pro j. riban largo de argento de cypre *consimiliter* ab eo *empto* [*et liberato*] de Burgh *et ceteris* de *consimili* dono domine apud Wyndessore, xxij^o. die Aprilis anno *predicto* ni Dauterne pro sotularibus suis de *consimili* dono domine *ibidem*, eiisdem die *et anno*, V. d. Johanni [Weorstede] [*pro*] j. riban aureo de cypre *consimiliter* ab eodem *empto et liberato* domino Roberto Sauage militi de [*consimili dono*] domine Londonie, xx^o. die Maii 'anno *predicto*,' X. s. Eidem Johanni Weorstede pro j. riban largo argenteo de [*cypre consimiliter*] ab eo *empto et liberato* Johanni Prior ex *consimili* dono domine *ibidem*, eiisdem die *et anno*, XI. s. am pro vj. paribus sotularium *consimiliter* Londonie *emptis et eidem liberatis* pro filiis suis de *consimili* dono domine *ibidem*, [*eiisdem die et*] anno, II. s. 'I. d.' Cuidam Paltokmakare Londonie pro j. paltok 'ab eo *empto*' *et liberato* Johanni Hynton de [*consimili dono*] domine ~~apud Hattfeld~~ 'ibidem,' xij. die Septembris anno *predicto*, VIII. s. III. d. Pro j. cinctura cum j. . . . *ibidem emptis et eidem* Johanni *liberatis* de *consimili* dono domine *ibidem*, eiisdem die *et anno*, III. s. IIII. d. *empto apud* Dancastre in festo beate Marie Magdalene, *et liberato* Johanni Hynton de *consimili* dono domine eodem festo anno *predicto*, XXX. s. Pro j. hakeneio *consimiliter* *empto apud* Hattfeld *et liberato* cuidam valletto rok' ex *consimili* dono domine *ibidem*, eiisdem die *et anno*, VI. s. VIII. d. Eidem valletto [*ducenti dictum*] hakeneium de Hattfeld usque Londoniam super secretis negotiis domine ex *consimili* dono domine pro expensis [*suis, eiisdem*] die *et anno*, VI. s. VIII. d. Johanni Veisy et Johanni Schinnare de *consimili* dono domine pro

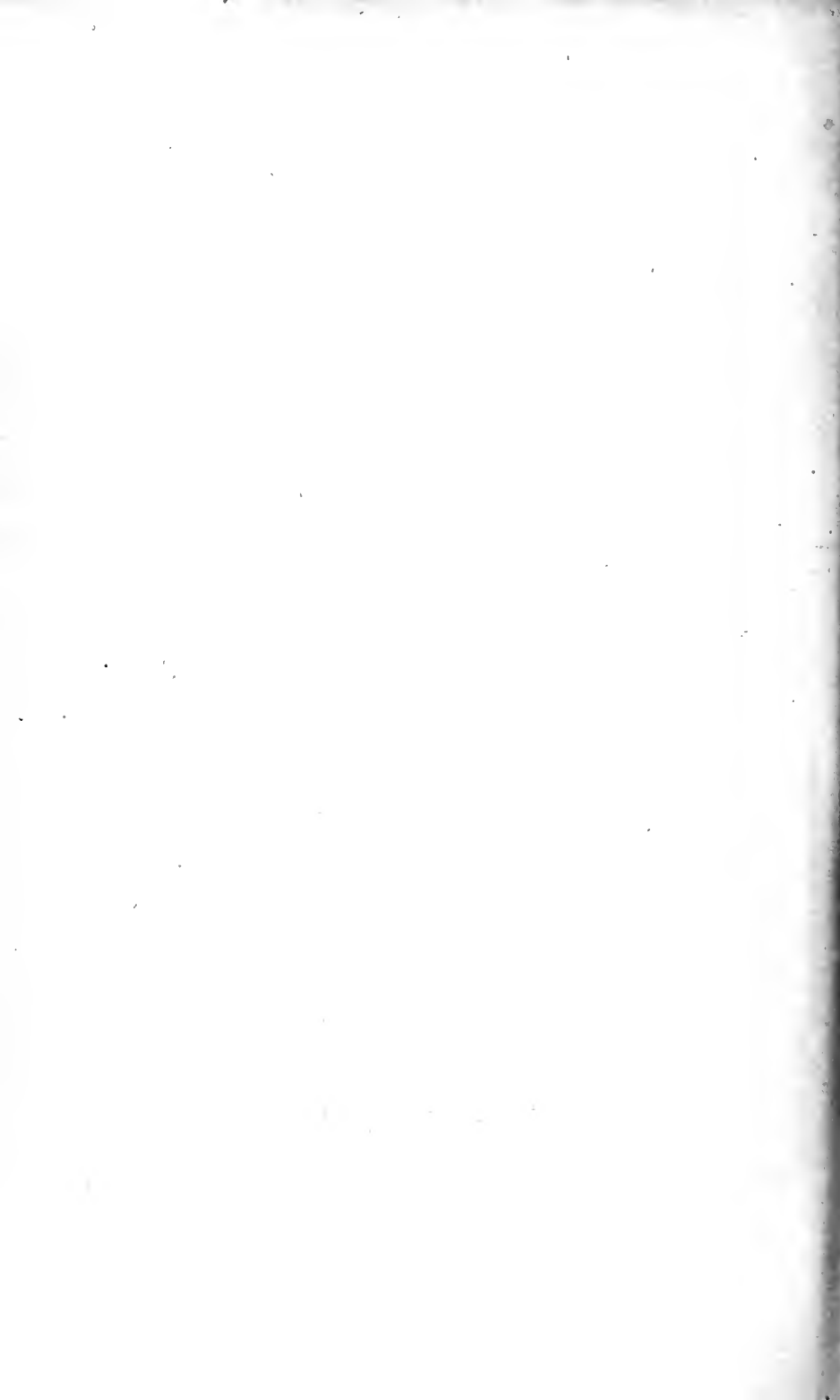
. *ibidem*, *eiisdem die et anno*, IIII. s. Roberto Pynel et Johanne uxori eius de *consimili* dono Decembris Londonie, *eiisdem die et anno*, XX. s. Stephano Low venienti domine Comitisse cum litteris [*Roberti Sa*]uage de Hibernia usque Hattfeld de *consimili* dono domine, xx. die Decembris anno 'predicto,' VI. s. VIII. d. [*Cuidam valetto*?] [*d*]ucis Lancastrie venienti domine Comitisse cum litteris domine Blanchie Lancastrie ex *consimili* dono domine, [*eiisdem die*] *et anno*, II. s. Cuidam gacioni venienti cum Philippa Panettaria de Pullesdone usque Hattfeld de [*consimili dono domin*]e *ibidem*, *eiisdem die et anno*, XII. d. Galfrido Chaucer de *consimili* dono domine ~~*ibidem*~~ [*pro necessariis contra festu*]m Nativitatis *ibidem*, *eiisdem die et anno*, II. s. VI. d. Johanni Schynare pro *consimilibus necessariis* [*de consimili don*]o domine *ibidem* *eiisdem die et anno*, II. s. Cuidam valetto domine de Moubray venienti clere Elen' et j. Brewes Dalham et Brestowe cum v. equis de Insula de Oxholm per Blythe propter congelacionem aquarum inter Hattfeld et insulam predictam ex *consimili* dono domine *ibidem*, [*eiisdem die et*] anno, VI. s. VIII. d.

Petro de With' pro annona sua de *consimili* dono domine f. 101. apud Hattfeld primo die Januarii Magistro Johanni Koc Comit' Richmundie pro *consimili* annona de *consimili* dono domine *ibidem*, [*eiisdem die et anno*,] XIII. s. IIII. d. Johanni Lincolnie clerico coquine dicti Comit' pro *consimili* annona sua [*consimili dono domine*] *ibidem*, *eiisdem die et anno*, XIII. s. IIII. d. Ricardo Zenelee pro *consimili* annona ut supra [*de consimili dono domine*] *ibidem*, *eiisdem die et anno*, XIII. s. IIII. d. Cuidam gacioni Nicholai Gernoun venienti domine Comitisse de Campesse usque Hattfeld ij^o. die Januarii anno predicto, III. s. IIII. d. Henrico Cone pro j. lecto de rubeo weorstede cum ij. ridellis et dimidio celare de rubeo ca[nabo] . . . de rubeo canabo¹ ab eo emptis et liberatis Johanni Prior de *consimili* dono domine Londonie, xij. LI. s. Domino Thome capellano de capella Regine ex *consimili* dono domine *ibidem*, *eiisdem* [*die et anno*], . . . Thome Prior de *consimili* dono domine apud Hattfeld x^o. die Decembris 'anno predicto,' XX. s. Ricardo P[ynel de] *consimili*

¹ The repetition is in the MS.

dono domine *ibidem*, eiisdem die et anno, VIII. d. Gilberto de la Sancorie pro sumpt[ibus suis] apud Eltham de consimili dono domine, Londonie, xx^o. die Decembris anno predicto, XXIX. s. pro j. lecto de dupplici weorstede ab eodem empto et liberato Henrico Kyng de consimili d[ono domine], primo die Marci Anno xxxii^o., XXVI. s. VIII. d. Cuidam monaco claustri ex consimili dono domine *ibidem*, eiisdem die et anno, XIII. s. IIII. d. Bette panetarie 'domine' . . . [ex consimili] dono domine apud Campesse, iiij^o. die Aprilis anno predicto, XX. s. Dionisio coquinario predicto [filie domine ex consimili] dono eiusdem 'domine' *ibidem*, eiisdem die et anno, X. s. Agathe nutrici predicto filie domine pro d[ebitis] de Campesse acquietandis ex consimili dono domine per manus Johannis Massingham *ibidem*, eiisdem die [et anno] Symoni Buchel pro iiij. ulnis rubei veluetti ab eodem emptis et liberatis domino Roberto Savage Kyng ex consimili dono domine Londonie, xij. die aprilis anno predicto, precio ulni xii. s., XLVIII. s. consimiliter emptis Londonie et liberatis Johanni de Hynton' de consimili dono domine, *ibidem* eiisdem die et anno, braccali consimiliter *ibidem* empto et liberato eidem Johanni de consimili dono domine *ibidem*, eiisdem die [et anno] Symoni Yrichess de consimili dono domine Londonie xix^o. die Aprilis anno predicto, XII. d. H [pro j. lecto] de blu weorstede cum iiij. curtinis de Ynde card' et pro ij. libris corde de canabo [ab eo emptis et liberatis] Nicholao Beknesfeld et Elene die sponsalium eorundem ex consimili dono domine apud Angle anno predicto, XLVIII. s. Hanel Wyngare ex consimili dono domine apud Lirpol primo die S[eptembris] Hugoni Withe, valletto Johannis Glanuille venienti domine Comitisse cum litteris argento et fald . . . [ex consimili] dono domine *ibidem*, eiisdem die et anno, XIII. s. IIII. d. Elene Beknesfeld de consimili [dono domine] apud Londoniam anno predicto, VI. s. VIII. d. Gilot garderobe ex consimili dono domine *ibidem* Henrico Kyng de consimili dono domine apud Reding, vj. die Novembris anno predicto, XIII. s. IIII. d. [ex consimili] dono domine *ibidem* eiisdem die et anno, II. s. Thome pagetto de camera

de *consimili* [*dono domine, eiusdem die*] *et anno*, XVI. D. Custodi Leonum apud *tarrim Londoniensem* ex *consimili* dono domine *ibidem*, VI. s. VIII. D. Thome pagetto de camera pro j. pari calcarium 'empto' ex *consimili* 'dono' domine *ibidem* [*eiusdem die et anno*] Willelmo Hunte ex *consimili* dono domine, *ibidem*, eiusdem die *et anno*, II. s. Waltero George [*ex consimili dono domine*] eiusdem die *et anno*, III. s. IIII. D. ij. munestrallis Regine Scocie ex *consimili* dono domine ANNO XXXIIJ.^o, XIII. s. IIII. D. Pro j. paltok empto Londonie *et* liberato Thom[e] ex *consimili* 'dono domine,' ~~precio eius~~, eiusdem die *et anno*, VI. s. VIII. D. vj. vallettis ducis Lan[castrie] ardentibus circa quadrigam domine de hospicio dicti ducis de le Neythe usque garderobam Londonie [*de consimili dono domine*], eiusdem die *et anno*, XIII. s. IIII. D.



Chaucer as Forester of North Netherton,

IN THE COUNTY OF SOMERSET,

14 RICH. II. TO 1 HEN. IV.

A.D. 1390-1—A.D. 1400.

BY

WALFORD D. SELBY,

OF H. M. PUBLIC RECORD OFFICE,
EDITOR OF *THE GENEALOGIST*, ETC. ETC.

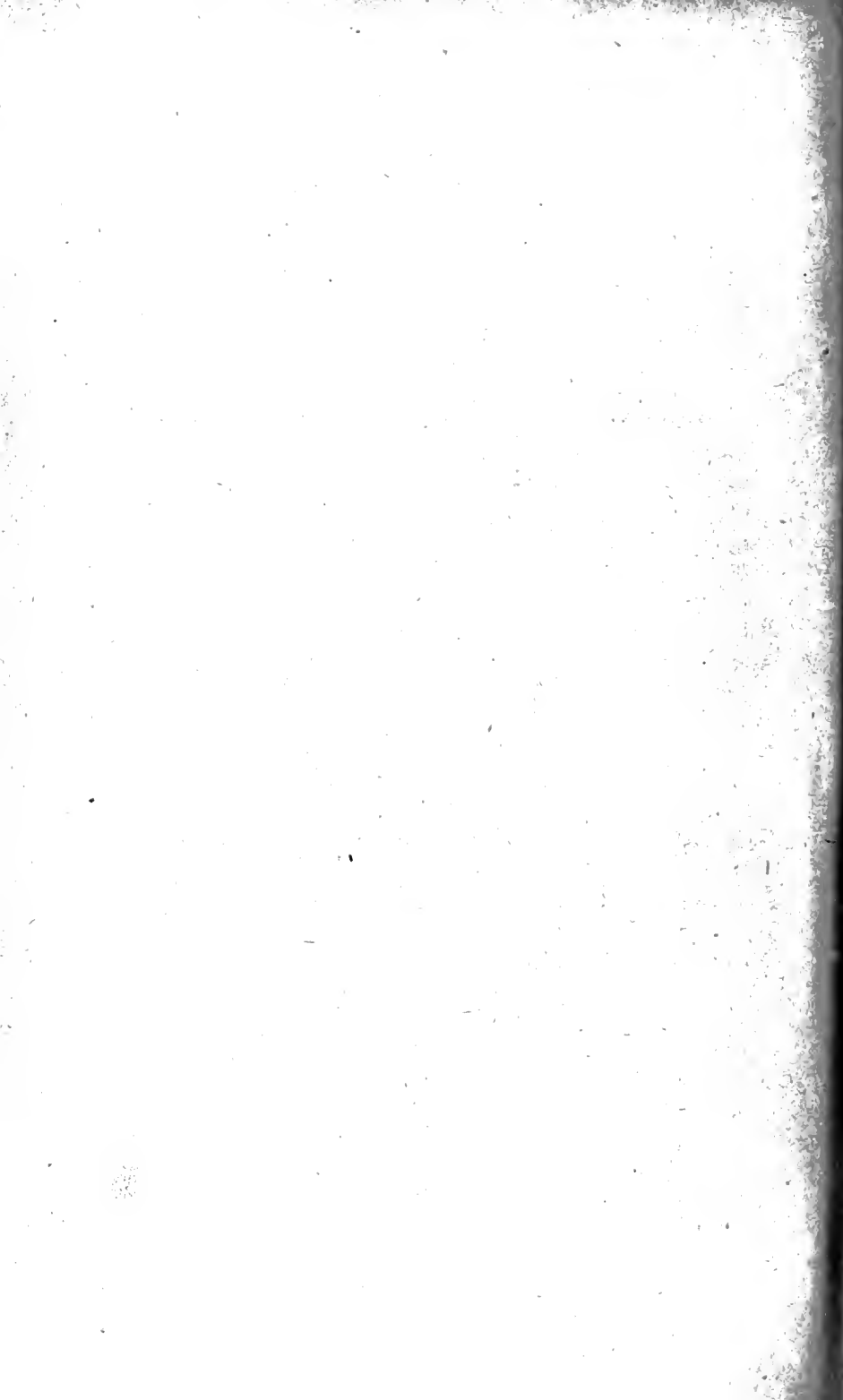
WITH AN APPENDIX ON

- I. Chaucer's Grandfather "Robert le Chaucer,"
- II. Chaucer's Connection with Lynn and Norfolk,

BY

WALTER RYE,

AUTHOR OF *NORFOLK TOPOGRAPHY*, ETC. ETC.



GEOFFREY CHAUCER, FORESTER OF NORTH
PETHERTON, CO. SOMERSET,

A.D. 1390-1—1400.

[From 'The Athenæum,' 20th Nov., 1886, p. 672-3.]

WHILE Chaucer students are toiling through the thousands of membranes of such bulky MSS. as the *Coram Rege* and *De Banco* Rolls in the hope of finding some fresh notices of the poet, it would appear as if standard works, printed, but insufficiently indexed, afford a far more limited hunting-ground, which has not yet been thoroughly exhausted. For the last few years no new Chaucer notices have been forthcoming, and if memory serves me, the latest discovery was due to the perseverance of Mr. Walter Rye. That energetic antiquary, following up his determination to make the poet a Norfolk man (born, perhaps, at Lynn), thought it as well to investigate an entry duly indexed in a volume entitled *Placitorum Abbreviatio*, which was published by the Record Commissioners as far back as the year 1811; the result being that, assisted by Dr. F. J. Furnivall's earlier researches, a hitherto neglected reference to a *Coram Rege* Roll of the nineteenth year of Edward II. enabled Mr. Rye to ascertain, in addition to minor points, the correct name of the poet's grandfather, to wit, Robert le Chaucer.

Now, once more, a printed work, and one that has been before the world for a period of not less than ninety-five years, has furnished a clue of remarkable interest. The credit of the discovery of the reference, I should in the first place state, is due to Mr. William Floyd, an antiquary who is as well known for his valuable collections of original notes from the public records as for his liberality in placing the contents of his note-books at the service of every inquirer. It was through an entry in one of Mr. Floyd's note-books that the curious deed relating to Chaucer's "raptus" of Cecilia Chaumpaigne was first discovered eleven years ago, and now again he comes forward with the startling piece of information to the

Chaucer searcher that the poet was Forester of North Petherton in the county of Somerset, and that he was succeeded in this post by a Thomas Chaucer. The authority for this statement is to be found on p. 62 of the third volume of Collinson's well-known *History and Antiquities of the County of Somerset* in the excellent account of North Petherton (vol. iii. pp. 54—74). In dealing with the history of the parish Collinson furnishes much precise information with regard to the Somerset forests,¹ and, *inter alia*, he distinguishes between the "forestarii baronum et militum," the "king's foresters," and the "foresters in fee." He then proceeds to trace the history of the office of king's forester within the park of Petherton. This account is brought down to one Sabina Peche, who "died 13 Edward II., and on her death Nicholas Peche her son paid his relief for her lands in Newton." Collinson then continues:

"Matthew, the son of this Nicholas Peche, sold all his right in a messuage called the *Park-house*, and in certain parcels of land in Newton and Exton, as also to the bailiwick of the forests of Petherton, Exmore, Neroche, Mendip, Selwood, and the custody of the warren of Somerton, to Sir Richard d'Amori, Knt. This sale was made 10 Edward III. All which lands and office were 31 Edw. III. (probably after another sale from the family of D'Amori) found to have been part of the possessions of Roger Mortimer, Earl of March, in whose descendants, and the Dukes of York, it continued till the time of Edw. IV., when it came to the Crown."

Then follows immediately the passage which contains the new Chaucer note:—

"These foresters of the family of Mortimer, as also the Dukes of York, appointed substitutionary foresters, to whom (as it appears by the Park Rolls) their whole power was delegated, as far as relates to this part of North Petherton.

10 Ric. II. [June 1386-7],² Richard Brittle, by the appointment of the Earl of March.

14 Ric. II. [22 June, 1390, to 21 June, 1391], Richard Brittle and Gefferey Chaucer, by the appointment of the Earl of March.

21 Ric. II. [1397-8], Gefferey Chaucer, by Alianor, Countess of March.

4 Hen. V. [1416-17], Thomas Chaucer, by Edward,³ Earl of March.

¹ On the subject of forest trespasses he incidentally remarks, that one early writer complained that it was by the forest laws safer to be a beast than a Christian man.

² Collinson only gives the regnal years.

³ The name should be *Edmund*.

8 Hen. VI., William Wrothe and Thomas Attemore.

12 Hen. VI., William Wrothe.

29 Hen. VI., Sir William Bonville and Richard Luttrell, by the Duke of York.

33 Hen. VI., Richard Stafford and Richard Luttrell.

38 Hen. VI., James Boteler, Earl of Ormond.

2 Edw. IV., Philip de St. Maur.

5 Edw. IV., John St. Albin, of Ashway.

14 Edw. IV., Sir Giles D'Aubeny, for life.

23 Hen. VII., Robert Wrothe, for thirty years.

Soon after the expiration of which term, Sir Thomas Wrothe, son and heir of the said Robert, purchased, 3 Edw. VI., of that king the fee of the park and manor of Newton Regis. His descendants in the time of Queen Elizabeth pulled down the park-house, and carried the materials to a lodge called the Broad Lodge, which the late Sir Thomas Wroth improved to a handsome dwelling. The whole park¹ is now converted into farms, and belongs to Sir Thomas Acland, Bart., in right of his grandmother, eldest daughter and coheir of Sir Thomas Wroth."

Thus far Collinson, who, be it observed, fails to identify the poet in the "substitutionary forester" appointed 14 Ric. II. (A.D. 1390-1), and again in 21 Ric. II. (A.D. 1397-8). Now as this is the only notice, so far as I am aware, which connects the name of Geoffrey Chaucer with the county of Somerset, it may at first sight appear somewhat rash to identify this particular "Geoffrey Chaucer" as being the poet. It therefore becomes necessary to state the reasons for the identification. And, first, I believe I am strictly correct in stating that the names "Geoffrey" and "Thomas," taken in conjunction with the dates of the appointments, were alone amply sufficient to satisfy such a careful worker as Mr. Floyd as to the identity of the persons referred to. The name "Geoffrey" Chaucer, indeed, constitutes some sort of identification, inasmuch as no Geoffrey Chaucer other than the poet is known during the reign of Richard II.; still this identification by the Christian name is not altogether convincing. It is, however, to be noticed that the appointment was made by the Earl of March. The question then at once arises, Can any connection be traced between this Earl of March and Geoffrey Chaucer, the poet? I think so, and in this manner.

¹ In this park was found the curious amulet of King Alfred mentioned in vol. i. p. 87.

The earliest notice of the poet is one that was discovered twenty years ago by Mr. E. A. Bond, the present Principal Librarian of the British Museum. Some fragments of parchment, which had been pasted down to the covers of an ancient manuscript (Add. MS. 18,632) to serve as a lining to the binding, proved on examination to be portions of a household account of Elizabeth, daughter and heiress of William de Burgh, the last Earl of Ulster of that name, and wife of Prince Lionel, third son of Edward III.; and, strange to say, the name of Geoffrey Chaucer as a page in the household of Prince Lionel or a special attendant on the Countess of Ulster was found three times repeated on these very waste fragments, the earliest entry, under date April, 1357, relating to the gift of an entire suit of clothes to the future poet, consisting of a paltock or short cloak, a pair of red and black breeches, and a pair of shoes. A full account of these "New Facts in the Life of Chaucer" was given by Mr. Bond in the *Fortnightly Review* for August 15th, 1866 (No. xxxi.). An exact transcript of these interesting fragments has also, I believe, been issued to members of the Chaucer Society within the last few months.¹

Here at once we have the clue to the connection between Geoffrey Chaucer, the poet, and Roger Mortimer, the fourth Earl of March, who is referred to by Collinson as appointing the foresters of North Petherton. Briefly, this fourth Earl of March was grandson of Elizabeth de Burgh referred to above, as may be clearly seen by the annexed pedigree:—

Prince Lionel, Duke of Clarence, third son of Edward III.	= Elizabeth de Burgh, to whom Geoffrey Chaucer was page (?) in 1357.
└───┬───┘	
Philippa, ob. Jan. 5, 5 Rich II. (see Q.R. Anc. Misc. Bund. 198, No. 16).	= Edmund Mortimer, 3rd Earl of March.
└───┬───┘	
Alionora, daughter of Thos. Holland, 2nd Earl of Kent, who reappointed Geoffrey Chaucer as Forester in 21 Ric. II. (1397-8). ²	= Roger Mortimer, 4th Earl of March, who appointed Geoffrey Chaucer Forester of North Petherton in 1390-1. Ob. July 20, 22 Ric. II. ³

¹ It forms part of the present publication. F. J. F.

² Collinson appears to be wrong in this date, as a new appointment would hardly be required until the death of the earl. Perhaps it should be 22 Ric. II. (A.D. 1398-9).

³ See "March Lands" (Q.R. Anc. Misc. Bund. 198, No. 98), where the

With these facts before us, it seems perfectly reasonable to admit, without further proof, this identification of the Forester of North Petherton. "Unbelieving Thomases" are, however, abroad in these days of original research, and, therefore, to be accepted, important facts have to be proved, so to speak, "right up to the hilt." It becomes necessary, then, to adduce as much evidence as is possible in support of every contention. In this particular case the year of the appointment is material. It is well known that Chaucer held the post of Comptroller of Customs in the Port of London up to the tenth year of the reign of Richard II.; he then lost the appointment for some reason not satisfactorily explained. In 11 Richard II. (1387-8) Chaucer assigned his two pensions to one John Scalby. It would, therefore, appear that his income at this period was suffering a considerable reduction. In 13 Richard II. (1389-90), however, he obtained the appointment of Clerk of the King's Works at Westminster, but one John Gedney succeeded to the post in less than two years, to wit, in September, 1391 (15 Richard II.); and from this date the Chaucer notices in the Public Records dwindle away. But this is precisely the period when it is now announced that he held the forestership of North Petherton, and whether the appointment necessitated personal superintendence on the spot or not, an unsatisfactory gap in the poet's life is now filled up, and in a manner exactly in accordance with the poet's pecuniary requirements. The patron who gives him the appointment is one whom, with the ascertained facts of Chaucer's earlier career before us, we might have confidently named; and it must, moreover, be a matter of considerable interest to the wide circle eager to follow all the most minute events in the poet's life to learn now for the first time of what we may consider as a friendly connection, extending over more than forty years, between the poet and the distinguished descendants of Prince Lionel and Elizabeth, Countess of Ulster.

heading of the roll runs: "Quo die idem Rogerus obiit, post ejus mortem dominium prædictum devenit in manus dicti Regis nomine custodia, ratione minoris ætatis Ed'i filii et heredis dicti Rogeri comitis." Doyle's *Official Baronage* gives the date of the death of Earl Roger as "Aug. 15, 1398," but the correctness of the date given above (July 20) is confirmed by another roll in the same bundle (No. 91), where it is fixed as "festum Sancte Margarete virginis."

This is all the evidence I am at the moment prepared with in proof of the identification, and it is submitted, without further research, for the criticism of the students of Chaucer's life, with a view to elicit comments, and so to bring about a decision on the point one way or the other. In the event of the identification proving acceptable, this interesting item in the poet's life-story will duly find its place, together with any additional notes that others may be able to furnish, in the volume of *Life-Records of Chaucer*, which has for some years been in course of preparation for the Chaucer Society under the editorship of Dr. F. J. Furnivall and myself. I may add, incidentally, that in glancing over Collinson's pages I noted that a branch of the family of Hayrun or Heron is mentioned in connection with North Petherton. On the Heron question I would refer my readers to Mrs. Haweis's careful summary of the poet's life in *Belgravia* for July, 1882.

In conclusion, it may be advantageous to indicate the line of future research suggested by this new "find." In the first place, an attempt should be at once made to trace the present whereabouts of the "Park Rolls," which, at the time Collinson wrote, before 1791, seem to have been in the possession of Sir Thomas Acland.¹ These, if found, would certainly prove of great interest. The series is apparently defective, as a successor to Geoffrey Chaucer should have been appointed, according to present information, in the first year of Henry IV. Next, the Public Records offer some chance of further light on the particular point, if a careful examination were made of some bundles of Ministers' Accounts known as "March Lands" (Exch. Q.R. Ancient Miscellanea, Bundles 197 to 201).

I have already noted in the "descriptive slips" of these last-named records a "forester's" roll, dated 23 Richard II., for North

¹ Sir Thomas Acland, the present baronet, has most kindly allowed a search to be made in his muniment room at Killerton, by Mr. Winslow Jones, but without success. Sir Alexander Acland Hood has also thrown open his muniments at St. Audries, Bridgwater, with a like result. In the last-named baronet's possession are the MSS. collected by Mr. T. Palmer, from which Collinson compiled his History, and with reference to these Sir Alexander Hood writes: "I feel confident that Mr. Thomas Palmer saw the Rolls at Petherton Park. I have many of his manuscripts, and he always gives his authorities for his statements."

Petherton (?), of which, however, the heading—with the usual bad luck attending the searches for original Chaucer documents—is defaced by galls, and all that remains of the name of the particular “forester” is the final portion, “war.”¹ But I am not at present satisfied that Hunter has properly assigned this roll to North Pether-ton. I may also add that Bundle 198 of “March Lands” contains several receipts given by Sir John Clanvowe,² who, it will be remembered, was one of the witnesses to the “raptus” deed executed by Cecilia Chaumpaigne.

With reference to Thomas Chaucer, so much space has already been occupied with the identification of the *father* (?) that it will be better to leave the subject of his identity and connection with the poet for future consideration.

WALFORD D. SELBY.

P.S.—The foregoing may suggest to some the word-likeness sketched by a New England poet, which well accords with the new “find”:

An old man in a lodge within a park ;
 The chamber walls depicted all around
 With portraiture of huntsman, hawk, and hound,
 And the hurt deer. He listeneth to the lark,
 Whose song comes with the sunshine through the dark
 Of painted glass in leaden lattice bound ;
 He listeneth and he laugheth at the sound,
 Then writeth in a book like any clerk.
 He is the poet of the dawn, who wrote
 The Canterbury Tales, and his old age
 Made beautiful with song ; and as I read
 I hear the crowing cock, I hear the note
 Of lark and linnnet, and from every page
 Rise odours of ploughed field or flowery mead.

¹ With the interpolation of a *c* between the letters *w* and *a*, this would do very well for the termination of the name “Chawcar.” [A more careful examination of the MS. has proved that the name is “John Janesware.” The roll is, therefore, not one of the series of “Park Rolls.” Of course, if the Christian name were “Geoffrey,” I should read it “Janesware.”—W. D. S.]

² The name is given incorrectly as “Clauebowe” in the “raptus” deed. [I have here made a mistake. The receipts are given by Sir *Thomas* Clanvowe, who may, or may not, have been a relation of Sir John.—W. D. S.]



CHAUCER.

From the Harleian MS. 4865.

APPENDIX.

I.

CHAUCER'S GRANDFATHER, ROBERT LE CHAUCER.

BY WALTER RYE.

[From 'The Athenæum,' 29 January, 1881.]

To make myself intelligible to those who have not studied the subject, I will restate the hitherto accepted pedigree in the words of Sir H. Nicolas. A Richard Chaucer, a vintner of London, who in his will, dated 1349, mentions only his wife Mary and her son Thomas Heyroun, is said to have had "by the said Mary (or some other wife) a son John Chaucer, who was also a citizen and vintner of London; for the said Thomas Heyroun by his will, dated on April 7th, 1349, . . . appointed his brother [*i. e.* his half-brother] John Chaucer his executor," &c.

That this John Chaucer was the father of the poet seems abundantly proved, but an entry on mem. 13 of the Coram Rege Roll of Hilary 19 Edward II. (1326), as to a plea held at Norwich, equally abundantly proves that the poet's grandfather was Robert, and not Richard le Chaucer, as has hitherto been supposed.

For many reasons the entry is an interesting one, so I subjoin a translation of the first part of it; the latter is chiefly taken up with technicalities:—

"London.—Agnes, the widow of Walter de Westhale, Thomas Stace, Geoffrey Stace, and Laurence 'Geffreyesman Stace,'¹ were attached to answer *Richard le Chaucer of London and Mary his wife* on a plea that whereas the custody of the land and heir of *Robert le Chaucer* until the same heir became of full age belonged to the said Robert and Mary (because the said Robert held his land in socage, and the said Mary is nearer in relationship to the heir of the said Robert), and (whereas) the said Richard and Mary long remained in

¹ This curious way of describing "Laurence, the man of Geoffrey Stace." occurs again in a Patent Roll cited hereafter (18 Edw. II., pt. 2, mem. 29d), where Hugh, the man of Philip Harneys, is described as "Hugo Phelippesman Harneys."

full and peaceful seizin of such wardship, the said Agnes, Thomas, Geoffrey, and Laurence by force and arms took away *John, the son and heir of the said Robert*, who was under age and in the custody of the said Richard and Mary, and married him against the will of the said Richard and Mary and of the said heir, and also did other unlawful acts against the said Richard and Mary, to the grave injury of the said Richard and Mary, and against the peace.

“And therefore the said Richard and Mary by their attorney complain that whereas the custody of the land and heir of the said Robert, viz. of one messuage with its appurtenances in Ipswich, until the full age of, &c., belonged, &c., because the said Robert held the said messuage in socage and the said Mary is nearer in relationship to the said Robert, viz. *mother of the said heir, and formerly the wife of the said Robert*, and (whereas) the said Richard and Mary remained in full and peaceful seizin of the said wardship for a long while, namely, for one year; they, the said Agnes, Thomas, Geoffrey, and Laurence, on the Monday before the feast of St. Nicholas, in the eighteenth year of the present king, and against the will of the said Richard and Mary, stole and took away by force and arms, viz. swords, bows and arrows, the said John, son and heir of the said Robert, who was under age, viz. being under the age of fourteen years, and then in the wardship of the said Richard and Mary at London, namely, in the ward of *Cordwainerstrete*, and married him to one *Joan, the daughter of Walter de Esthale*,¹ and committed other unlawful acts, &c.

“Wherefore they say they are injured, and have suffered damage to the extent of 300*l.*”

The defence put in was

“that, according to the customs of the ‘Burg’ of Ipswich from time to which, &c., any heir under age when his heirship shall descend to him shall remain in the charge of the nearest of his blood, but that his inheritance shall not descend to him till he has completed the age of twelve years, and shall know how to reckon and how to measure; and they say that the said heir of the said Robert completed the age of twelve years before the suing out of the said writ.”²

Most of the rest of the membrane is taken up with a long technical dispute as to jurisdiction, of which the Mayor and citizens of London apparently got the best, for the trial came on before R. Baynard and Hamo de Chikewell and Nicholas de Farndon (the

¹ No doubt a transcriber's error for Westhale. See the other authorities cited later.

² And it is alleged that the said Agnes, Thomas, Geoffrey, and Laurence did not cause the said heir to be married.

two latter sitting on behalf of the City), at St. Martin's the Great (le Grand), London, on the Sunday next before the Nativity of the B. V. M., when, the defendants making default, a verdict was entered up for the plaintiffs for 250*l.* damages.

Dissatisfied with the verdict, Geoffrey Stace and his co-defendants in 2 Edw. III. (1328) attainted Richard le Chaucer and his wife of perjury said to have been committed at the trial; but after a lengthened argument it was decided that no writ of attaint could lie as to the verdict of a jury within the City; so Geoffrey took nothing by his motion, but, on the other hand, was committed to the custody of the Marshal of the City on the old verdict found against him.

All this is set out at great length in the *Liber Albus* of the City of London (ed. 1859, vol. i. pp. 437-44), in which it was no doubt preserved because it was a valuable precedent for the City. As the entry winds up with a still valid reference to the Coram Rege Roll (before quoted) in these words, "Prout patet termino Sancti Hillarii anno regni patris Domini Regis nunc XIX. rotulo XIII.," it certainly is hard to understand how Chaucerian collectors have omitted to follow up so very clear a clue.¹

Still more strange is it that they should have left it to an outsider to discover that Geoffrey Stace presented a petition to Parliament in the same year (2 Edw. III., 1328, No. 6), praying for relief against the damages of 250*l.*, which he alleged were excessive, on the ground that the heir's estate was only worth 20*s.* a year. This petition sets out all the proceedings, referring to John as "fuiz et heire Robert le Chaucier," but puts the finding of the jury thus: "Et trove fu q'ils avoient ravi le dit heire, *mes ne mie mariee*," and alleges that "le dit heire est al large et ove les avantditz Richard et Marie demourant et nulson dismarie." I have not yet been able to ascertain the result of this petition.

From the three documents described above, therefore, it is clear that the Mary who was ultimately the wife of Richard Chaucer had

¹ Riley, in his introduction to his *Memorials* (p. xxxiv), mistakes the purport of the trial, and goes out of his way to say that "it does not throw any light," &c.

been married twice before: once to — Heyroun, by whom she had a son Thomas Heyroun, and once to Robert le Chaucer, by whom she had a son John Chaucer, the poet's father. The confusion has no doubt been caused by her having married two men of the same surname. It has always been hard to understand why, if Richard were John's father, he did not mention him in his will, which left all his property in charity; but the present discovery clears away this difficulty.

The fact of Richard le Chaucer, his wife, and her son living in the ward of Cordwanerstrete, where dwelt the shoemakers and other workers in leather, should not be forgotten by those who claim a gentle, if not noble, descent for the poet, ignoring the fact that "Le Chaucer" simply means the "The Shoemaker." The arms borne by the poet seem to have been those of De Waldegrave differenced, and I think I have a clue which may show that the Chaucers followed the banner of this family into Aquitaine. This, however, is little better than a guess at present.¹

We now come to the question as to who was this Robert le Chaucer, the poet's grandfather, and who were these Staces who took so lively an interest in his infant heir. On both points I can throw some little light, for I find on mem. 17 of the Fine Roll for 4 Edw. II. a commission, dated August 2nd (1310), appointing Robert le Chaucer one of the collectors in the port of London of the new customs upon wines granted by the merchants of Aquitaine, a post not unlike that afterwards filled in the same port by his grandson the poet.

At the same time Thomas Stace² was appointed to fill a similar office for Ipswich, so he and Robert Chaucer were brother officials, and no doubt thrown together in business matters. Can it be that Robert le Chaucer's wife was a sister or daughter of this Stace, and that the dispute was no more or less than a family quarrel? Such a supposition would account for the strong personal interest taken in it by the Staces. The expression on the Coram Rege Roll, that Mary, the wife of Richard, was *nearer* in relationship to her ward,

¹ Has it ever been noticed that the arms on John Chaucer's seal are almost identical with those of Swinford?

² I find a John Stace occurring in the Hundred Roll for London *circa* 1274, and we know there were Chaucers in London as early as 1226.

would almost imply that some one concerned was also related in a more remote degree.

The theory that the abduction of December arose from a family dispute is partly borne out by the fact that on the *previous* Michaelmas a fine was levied (Suffolk Fines, 18 Edw. II., No. 156) between Agnes, the widow of Walter de Westhale, petent, and John de Reynes, parson of the church of Melton, and Richard de Glaunvile (no doubt trustees), tenants, as to two parts of the manor of Colesle and of land at Alderton, being in effect a settlement on the widow for life, remainder to Sibilla the daughter of Walter de Westhale and the heirs of her body, remainder to Joan her sister (to whom John Chaucer was afterwards forcibly married), and ultimate remainder to the said John Chaucer, son of Robert le Chaucer, and his heirs.

The motive of the abduction, therefore, is sufficiently evident. The abduction itself forcibly reminds us of the so-called "raptus" of Cecilia Chaumpaigne by the poet himself before 1380.

By the way, at p. 138 of Mr. Furnivall's *Forewords* of 1875, a Pembrokeshire origin is suggested for those Chaumpaignes, but he has overlooked the fact that there were plenty of the name in Suffolk¹ contemporary with the poet, so the latter's adventure probably took place near the abode of his mother's family. Mr. Greenstreet is, I am happy to say, about to follow this clue up, so we shall probably soon know more not only of this affair, but as to what became of the Ipswich property once belonging to the Chaucers.

This, however, is a long digression, so I will return to Thomas Stace, who was burgess for Ipswich for various years between 1307 and 1327. He was also collector of the customs there in 1307 and 1308, and while bailiff in 1321 made seizures for the king's use in a way which caused a riot, particulars of which may be found on mem. 19d of the second part of the Patent Roll of 14 Edw. II. In 1324 he had ceased to be bailiff, and was implicated in another riot, this time against the bailiffs (see Patent Roll, 18 Edw. II., pt. ii. mem.

¹ See *Fees of Fines* (Suffolk), 10, 15, 18, and 23 Edw. I., 17 Edw. II., 4 Edw. III., &c. The fact that there was a Robert Chaumpaigne a citizen of London in the same year as Cecilia released Chaucer has apparently hitherto escaped notice. See Inq. P.M. 3 R. II. No. 90.

29d). Also concerned in the latter disturbance were the other defendant Geoffrey Stace (burgess in 1311-17 and 1327, and probably his brother), and the latter's two brothers, Henry Stace and Nicholas Stace.

Both Thomas and Geoffrey Stace would, therefore, seem to have been masterful men, who would not have thought much of the forcible abduction and marriage of a boy. Whether the poet was of kin to this Geoffrey or not, it is not improbable that he owed his Christian name to him. And the poet's London contemporaries and possible brothers, Henry and Nicholas Chaucer (both of Cordwaner Street), may have been named after Henry and Nicholas Stace.

The descents of the poet's two grandfathers I will leave to those better qualified than I to puzzle out, but I may put forward a suggestion that Robert le Chaucer's family may have originally come from Norfolk. The old MS. history of Lynn (now unluckily lost) known as *Lennæ Rediviva* (*sic*) states that the poet himself was born at Lynn, and there may have been some foundation for the story. There was a Benedict¹ le Chaucer implicated in the great Norwich riot of 1272 (*vide* the last part of my *Norfolk Antiquarian Miscellany*, p. 30), and some of his relations may have been among those who fled from the consequences to a friendly city. That London was friendly to Norwich about this time I could prove if it were necessary, *e. g.* by the fact that the writer of the London chronicle in the *Liber de Antiquis Legibus* is the only one who warmly espouses the side of the Norwich citizens with relation to this riot. It is noteworthy that among those who were concerned in such disturbance I find the names of Le Blund, Le Fevere, De Heylesdon, Le Noreys, and De Stodeye, names which reappear in the next century as mayors, sheriffs, and prominent citizens of London.

There was, by the way, another Chaucer in Norwich, viz. Walter le Chaucer, who was in 1292 a juror on an inquisition *ad quod damnum* as to the Friars Minors. Chaucer's writings contain several references to Norfolk, *e. g.* the Reeve who lived "byside the

¹ John le Chaucer of London is said by Riley (*Memorials*, p. xxv) to have had a son Benedict, *circa* 1298.

town men clepen Baldeswelle," Frere Nicholas of Linn the "reverend clerk," and the miller's wife who invokes the holy cross of Bromholme; while the bitterness against the Jews in the Prioress's Tale may well have sprung from family tales of the martyrdom of St. William of Norwich. Nor should it be forgotten that Thomas Chaucer, said to have been the poet's son, was (*jure uxoris*) a Norfolk landowner. Still, with a chain of London Chaucers from 1226 downwards, I fear probabilities are against me.

II.

CHAUCER'S CONNECTION WITH LYNN AND NORFOLK.

By WALTER RYE,¹

THERE are several things which tell in favour of Chaucer having been closely connected with Lynn and Norfolk.

1. The MS. History of Lynn, called *Lennæ Rediviva*, positively states that the poet was born at Lynn.²

2. We know that Lynn was a great wine port. Chaucer's grandfather Robert was a collector of wine duties in London in 1312, and his father John was a vintner of London in 1342. There was a Robert de London at Lynn in 1295 (*Feet of Fines* (Norfolk), Ed. I. No. 681), and again in 1307-9, and who imported and exported goods to and from Lynn in 1309. He was a Custom House officer there

¹ From the *Academy*, 1885.

² This history is said to have been written by Ben Adam for Edward IV. It was quoted by the *Norfolk Tour* of 1829:—"In addition to these worthies of Lynn, the *Lennæ Rediviva*, upon what authority we know not, says, under the head 'Friars,'—

'Lynn had the honour to present the world
With Geoffery Chaucer, Capgrave, and the curled
Pate Albanus de Lenna, John Barstone, William Cocheford,
John Thomson, Thomas Lambe, and 't did afford
The Court a jeaster, Hugh of Lynn was he,
All famous in theyr time, Lynn, nursed by thee.'

(*Norfolk Tour*, vol. i., p. 464, A.D. 1829.)

Mr. Rye has not yet been able to trace this *Lennæ Rediviva*.—F. J. F.

in 1338 (Lynn Customs Roll, W.N., 1881). Again, there was a Geoffrey le Suter¹ exporting and importing goods from and to Lynn in 1324. Could he have been an uncle of the poet, after whom the latter was named?

3. Chaucer, we know, was patronised by John of Gaunt. How they became acquainted is not known. Is it not probable that John of Gaunt accompanied his father, Edward III., in one or more of the journeys we know the latter made to Lynn for the purpose of visiting his mother Isabella (the "she-wolf") while she was at Rising Castle hard by? She was there in 1357, when Chaucer was in Prince Lionel's household (p. 24, above).

4. Chaucer speaks of "Friar Nicholas of Lynn, that reverend clerk." Friar Nicholas wrote a treatise on the Astrolabe. Chaucer also wrote on the Astrolabe, A.D. 1391.² In 1386 this very Nicholas of Lynn, who was a Carmelite, composed a calendar for Chaucer's patron, John of Gaunt (Rawlinson MSS., Bodleian C. 895; Ashmol. MSS., 5, 370, 391, v. fo. 4c).

5. Chaucer's alleged son, Thomas, married Matilda, daughter of Sir John Burghersh. John de Burghard was mayor of Lynn in 1331-2. N.B. It has been denied that Thomas was the poet's son, but he seems to have received grants from the poet's patron, John of Gaunt (Pet. to Parl., 11 Hen. V., p. 39a).

6. Chaucer speaks of the cross that St. Helen found—"The Holy Cross that St. Helen found" was the title of a Lynn guild, the certificate of which is still at the Record Office.³

¹ This assumes the identity of Souter, a cobbler, with Chaucer, a maker of *chausses*, which I cannot admit. They were distinct trades.—F. J. F.

² See the edition by Skeat, for the Early English Text and Chaucer Societies, and the Arabian originals there cited.—F. J. F.

³ See *English Gilds* (E. E. Text Soc.), p. 83. "*Lenne Episcopi*. . . . In þe honour of ihesu crist, and of his moder seinte marie, and of alle holy halwen, and namelike [= specially] of þe holy crouche þat seinte Eleyne founde. We schulle holde þis gilde þre moruwespeches bi þe 3er." There were many Holy Cross Gilds in England, and among them those of Stratford on Avon, and Birmingham (*Engl. Gilds*, p. 211—225, 239—250). Beverley had a Gild of St. Elene (*ib.* p. 148). As there was only one Holy Cross, that on which Christ is said to have died, and as the Legend was that Saint Helena found it 200 years after Christ's Resurrection, every one of the millions of references to the Cross in the Middle Ages was to 'the Holy Cross that Helen found,' tho' that exact phrase may not often occur.—F. J. F.

7. Chaucer wrote the Shipman's Tale. The Shipman's Guild was another of the Lynn guilds.¹

As to the other things pointing to Chaucer having been a Norfolk man (for other Norfolk Chaucers see *Norfolk Ant. Misc.*, ii, p. 550), or at all events well acquainted with Norfolk, take his references to

8. The Reve who "lyved byside the town men clepen Baldeswelle"—a most obscure Norfolk village;

9. The miller's wife who invokes the Holy Cross of Bromholme²—Bacton Abbey, on the east coast of Norfolk.

10. His reference to the alleged child murder by Jews is curious, and may refer to the "martyrdom" of St. William the Boy of Norwich. It is clear that he does not mean to refer to St. Hugh of Lincoln, for he says . . . "Hugh of Lincoln slain *also*." Norfolk was perhaps more than any other part of England the scene of Jewish persecutions. Besides that arising from "St. William," there was the Turnepin case of 1230, and most significant as bearing on the present inquiry, a cruel riot against the *Lynn* Jews in 1190.

11. Chaucer in the Nun's Priest's Tale has

" Certes he Jakke Straw and his meyné
Ne maden nevere schoutes half so shrille
Whan that they wolden *eny Flemyng kille*."³

¹ *English Gilds* (E. E. Text Soc.), p. 54: it was "specialeke in þe honour of þe exaltacion of þe holy crouche." Mr. Rye allows that Lynn was not the only town in England whereat Shipmen were.—F. J. F.

² A very common invocation.—F. J. F.

³ See Stowe's allusion to this in his *Annales* (1605), p. 458-9: "There were that day beheaded manie as well Flemings as Englishmen for no cause, but to fulfill the crueltie of the rude Commons: for it was a solemne pastime to them, if they could take any that was not sworne to them, to take from such a one his hooede with their accustomed clamour, and forthwith to behead him: neither did they shew any reuerence vnto sacred places, for in the very Churches did they kill whom they had in hatred: they fetcht 13 Flemings out of the Augustine Friers church in London, and 17 out of another church, and 32 in the Vintree, and so forth in other places of the Citie, and in Southwarke, al which they beheaded except (p. 459), they could plainly pronounce 'bread and cheese'; for, if their speech sounded any thing on *bret, or canse*, off went their heads, as a sure marke they were Flemings." JEFFERY CHAUCER in the tale of the Nunnes Priest. Flemings be-headed.

As I am copying from Stowe, I may as well add his account (p. 437) of *Chaucer's mission to Montreuil and Paris in 1377*, showing how some of the poet's companions were murdered:

"About the same time, the Earle of Salisbury, and Sir Richard Auglisison

Now the branch of the Wat Tyler—Jack Straw rebellion of 1381—in Norfolk was that of John the Litester or âyer, who was defeated and hung at North Walsham, one of his quarters being stuck up at *Lynn*. It is said that the Flemings introduced the woollen trade into Norfolk about 1336 at Worstead, the next parish to North Walsham. In my *Popular History of Norfolk* I have pointed out that in all probability Litester and Cubit, his chief backer, were Worstead men, as both names occur in the Subsidy Roll for that parish in 1315.

May not this passage of Chaucer elucidate an obscure corner of history, and show, that as far as Norfolk was concerned, the rising may have been only a riot against the industrious foreigners—just the same, in fact, as Appleyard's Conspiracy of 1570.

12. The name of Chaumpayne—familiar to Chaucer students in connection with the "raptus"—occurs at Fincham, near Lynn. If, as I think, it is the same as De Campanis, and Chaumpneys, it occurs in South Lynn itself.

Of course each of these points is nothing much in itself, but I venture to think that, taken as a whole, they are strongly in favour of my Lynn theory. Minor examples might be multiplied—for example, "the rule of St. Beneyt" was that of the best known Norfolk monastery; that of St. Austyn was represented at Lynn;

CHAUCER and others sent into France. a Poyton, the Bishop of Saint Davids, the Bishop of Hereford, GEFREY CHAUCER, (the famous Poet of England,) and other, were sent into Fraunce to treate a peace, or at the least a truce for two yeere or more; but they could not obtaine any longer truce then for one moneth, which they vtterly refused. Whereupon they stayed in Fraunce about these things; and some thinking they might safely haue passed betwixt Caleis and Douer, about fiftie taking Ship, were forthwith intercepted by [French] Galleyes, and were all slaine, two men and two women only excepted, euen in the very sight of the Townesmen of Caleys, they being not able to give them any ayde. Sir Hugh Caluely being at that present time Captaine of Caleys, tooke this so great an iniurie in very euill part, especially for that it was done whilst they were yet treating of peace; but he could not helpe it; wherefore forthwith he tooke with him a number of the best and chosenuit men, and purposing to requite this iniurie, made a roade into France, killing a great number of men, and brought back with him a great bootie of artillery and cattell. The messengers returned into England, and brought nothing backe with them, but rumor aud warre."—p. 437. (Prof. Arber reminds me of the passage.—F. J. F.)

Hugh Caluely, Captaine of Caleis.

[makes an in-road into France.]

[CHAUCER'S return to England.]

the Prioresses motto "Amor vincit omnia" was found on a ring recently picked up in Norfolk (*Norf. Arch.*, vi. p. 385), and so on.

I will conclude with a note about Chaucer's wife, who is said to have been the sister of Catherine, first the concubine and then the wife of John of Gaunt, and the daughter of Sir Payne Roelt, or Rote, and whom he married before 1366.

The very existence of this knight has been doubted; and considering the Chaucers' close connection with the wine trade, it is much more likely she was related to Nicht Rote, a Bordeaux merchant, who was a trier of wine at London in 1387 (Riley's *Memorials of London Life*, pp. 409, 490, 504).



THE SHIPMAN.

From the Ellesmere MS.



930
Vols. 2, 3 }
Vol. 4 } 5.75
Ser. no. 12 (1875)

H B
30.10.24

VICTORIA UNIVERSITY
LIBRARY

DO NOT REMOVE THIS CARD

